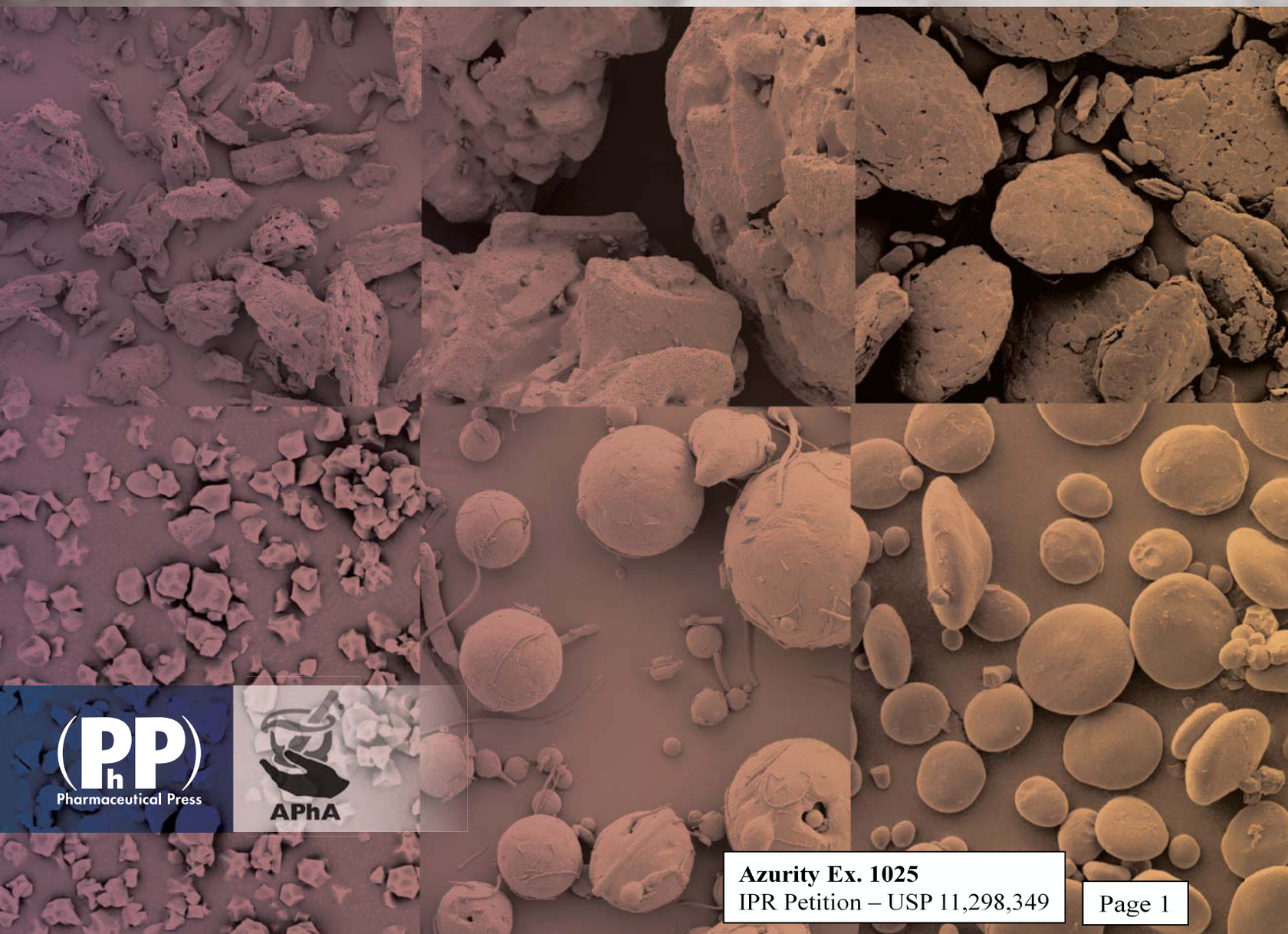
Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients

Sixth edition

Edited by
Raymond C Rowe, Paul J Sheskey and Marian E Quinn



Pharmaceutical Press
APhA

Azurity Ex. 1025
IPR Petition – USP 11,298,349
Page 1

Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients

SIXTH EDITION

Edited by

Raymond C Rowe BPharm, PhD, DSC, FRPharmS, FRSC, CPhys, MInstP

Chief Scientist

Intelligensys Ltd, Stokesley, North Yorkshire, UK

Paul J Sheskey BSc, RPh

Application Development Leader

The Dow Chemical Company, Midland, MI, USA

Marian E Quinn BSc, MSc

Development Editor

Royal Pharmaceutical Society of Great Britain, London, UK

APhA

London • Chicago Pharmaceutical Press

Published by the Pharmaceutical Press
An imprint of RPS Publishing

1 Lambeth High Street, London SE1 7JN, UK
100 South Atkinson Road, Suite 200, Grayslake, IL 60030-7820, USA

and the American Pharmacists Association
2215 Constitution Avenue, NW, Washington, DC 20037-2985, USA

© Pharmaceutical Press and American Pharmacists Association 2009

(PhP) is a trade mark of RPS Publishing

RPS Publishing is the publishing organisation of the Royal Pharmaceutical Society of Great Britain

First published 1986
Second edition published 1994
Third edition published 2000
Fourth edition published 2003
Fifth edition published 2006
Sixth edition published 2009

Typeset by Data Standards Ltd, Frome, Somerset
Printed in Italy by L.E.G.O. S.p.A.

ISBN 978 0 85369 792 3 (UK)
ISBN 978 1 58212 135 2 (USA)

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, without the prior written permission of the copyright holder.

The publisher makes no representation, express or implied, with regard to the accuracy of the information contained in this book and cannot accept any legal responsibility or liability for any errors or omissions that may be made.

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Contents

Preface x
Arrangement xi
Acknowledgments xiii
Notice to Readers xiii
International Steering Committee xiv
Editorial Staff xv
Contributors xvi
About the Editors xx
New Monographs xxi
Related Substances xxii
Bibliography xxiv
Abbreviations xxv
Units of Measurement xxvii

Monographs

A

Acacia 1
Acesulfame Potassium 3
Acetic Acid, Glacial 5
Acetone 7
Acetyltributyl Citrate 8
Acetyltriethyl Citrate 10
Adipic Acid 11
Agar 13
Albumin 14
Alcohol 17
Alginic Acid 20
Aliphatic Polyesters 23
Alitame 28
Almond Oil 29
Alpha Tocopherol 31
Aluminum Hydroxide Adjuvant 34
Aluminum Monostearate 35
Aluminum Oxide 37
Aluminum Phosphate Adjuvant 38
Ammonia Solution 39
Ammonium Alginate 41
Ammonium Chloride 42
Ascorbic Acid 43
Ascorbyl Palmitate 46
Aspartame 48
Attapulgite 51

B

Bentonite 53
Benzalkonium Chloride 56
Benzethonium Chloride 59
Benzoic Acid 61
Benzyl Alcohol 64
Benzyl Benzoate 66
Boric Acid 68
Bronopol 70
Butylated Hydroxyanisole 73
Butylated Hydroxytoluene 75
Butylene Glycol 77
Butylparaben 78

C

Calcium Acetate 82
Calcium Alginate 83
Calcium Carbonate 86
Calcium Chloride 89
Calcium Hydroxide 91
Calcium Lactate 92
Calcium Phosphate, Dibasic Anhydrous 94
Calcium Phosphate, Dibasic Dihydrate 96
Calcium Phosphate, Tribasic 99
Calcium Silicate 101
Calcium Stearate 103
Calcium Sulfate 105
Canola Oil 108
Carbomer 110
Carbon Dioxide 115
Carboxymethylcellulose Calcium 117
Carboxymethylcellulose Sodium 118
Carrageenan 122
Castor Oil 126
Castor Oil, Hydrogenated 128
Cellulose, Microcrystalline 129
Cellulose, Microcrystalline and Carboxymethylcellulose Sodium 134
Cellulose, Powdered 136
Cellulose, Silicified Microcrystalline 139
Cellulose Acetate 141
Cellulose Acetate Phthalate 143
Ceratonia 146
Ceresin 148

Cetostearyl Alcohol 150
Cetrimide 152
Cetyl Alcohol 155
Cetylpyridinium Chloride 157
Chitosan 159
Chlorhexidine 162
Chlorobutanol 166
Chlorocresol 168
Chlorodifluoroethane (HCFC) 171
Chlorofluorocarbons (CFC) 173
Chloroxylenol 176
Cholesterol 178
Citric Acid Monohydrate 181
Coconut Oil 184
Colloidal Silicon Dioxide 185
Coloring Agents 189
Copovidone 196
Corn Oil 199
Corn Starch and Pregelatinized Starch 200
Cottonseed Oil 202
Cresol 203
Croscarmellose Sodium 206
Crospovidone 208
Cyclodextrins 210
Cyclomethicone 215

D

Denatonium Benzoate 217
Dextrates 218
Dextrin 220
Dextrose 222
Dibutyl Phthalate 225
Dibutyl Sebacate 227
Diethanolamine 228
Diethyl Phthalate 230
Difluoroethane (HFC) 232
Dimethicone 233
Dimethyl Ether 235
Dimethyl Phthalate 236
Dimethyl Sulfoxide 238
Dimethylacetamide 241
Disodium Edetate 242
Docusate Sodium 244

E

Edetic Acid 247
Erythorbic Acid 250
Erythritol 251
Ethyl Acetate 253
Ethyl Lactate 256
Ethyl Maltol 257
Ethyl Oleate 259
Ethyl Vanillin 261
Ethylcellulose 262
Ethylene Glycol Stearates 267
Ethylene Vinyl Acetate 268
Ethylparaben 270

F

Fructose 273
Fumaric Acid 276

G

Gelatin 278
Glucose, Liquid 282
Glycerin 283
Glyceryl Behenate 286
Glyceryl Monooleate 288
Glyceryl Monostearate 290
Glyceryl Palmitostearate 293
Glycine 295
Glycofurol 297
Guar Gum 298

H

Hectorite 301
Heptafluoropropane (HFC) 303
Hexetidine 304
Hydrocarbons (HC) 306
Hydrochloric Acid 308
Hydrophobic Colloidal Silica 309
Hydroxyethyl Cellulose 311
Hydroxyethylmethyl Cellulose 314
Hydroxypropyl Betadex 315
Hydroxypropyl Cellulose 317
Hydroxypropyl Cellulose, Low-substituted 322
Hydroxypropyl Starch 325
Hypromellose 326
Hypromellose Acetate Succinate 330
Hypromellose Phthalate 333

I

Imidurea 337
Inulin 339

Iron Oxides 340
Isomalt 342
Isopropyl Alcohol 346
Isopropyl Myristate 348
Isopropyl Palmitate 350

K
Kaolin 352

L
Lactic Acid 355
Lactitol 357
Lactose, Anhydrous 359
Lactose, Inhalation 362
Lactose, Monohydrate 364
Lactose, Monohydrate and Corn Starch 370
Lactose, Monohydrate and Microcrystalline Cellulose 371
Lactose, Monohydrate and Povidone 373
Lactose, Monohydrate and Powdered Cellulose 374
Lactose, Spray-Dried 376
Lanolin 378
Lanolin, Hydrous 380
Lanolin Alcohols 382
Lauric Acid 383
Lecithin 385
Leucine 387
Linoleic Acid 389

M
Macrogol 15 Hydroxystearate 391
Magnesium Aluminum Silicate 393
Magnesium Carbonate 397
Magnesium Oxide 400
Magnesium Silicate 402
Magnesium Stearate 404
Magnesium Trisilicate 408
Maleic Acid 410
Malic Acid 411
Maltitol 414
Maltitol Solution 416
Maltodextrin 418
Maltol 421
Maltose 422
Mannitol 424
Medium-chain Triglycerides 429
Meglumine 431
Menthol 433
Methionine 436
Methylcellulose 438
Methylparaben 441
Mineral Oil 445
Mineral Oil, Light 447
Mineral Oil and Lanolin Alcohols 449
Monoethanolamine 450
Monosodium Glutamate 452
Monothioglycerol 454
Myristic Acid 455
Myristyl Alcohol 456

N
Neohesperidin Dihydrochalcone 458
Neotame 460
Nitrogen 461
Nitrous Oxide 463

O
Octyldodecanol 465
Oleic Acid 466
Oleyl Alcohol 468
Olive Oil 470

P
Palmitic Acid 473
Paraffin 474
Peanut Oil 476
Pectin 478
Pentetic Acid 480
Petrolatum 481
Petrolatum and Lanolin Alcohols 484
Phenol 485
Phenoxyethanol 488
Phenylethyl Alcohol 490
Phenylmercuric Acetate 492
Phenylmercuric Borate 494
Phenylmercuric Nitrate 496
Phospholipids 499
Phosphoric Acid 503
Polacrilin Potassium 504
Poloxamer 506
Polycarbophil 509
Polydextrose 513
Poly (DL-Lactic Acid) 515
Polyethylene Glycol 517
Polyethylene Oxide 522

Polymethacrylates 525
Poly(methyl vinyl ether/maleic anhydride) 534
Polyoxyethylene Alkyl Ethers 536
Polyoxyethylene Castor Oil Derivatives 542
Polyoxyethylene Sorbitan Fatty Acid Esters 549
Polyoxyethylene Stearates 554
Polyoxylglycerides 557
Polyvinyl Acetate Phthalate 562
Polyvinyl Alcohol 564
Potassium Alginate 566
Potassium Alum 567
Potassium Benzoate 569
Potassium Bicarbonate 570
Potassium Chloride 572
Potassium Citrate 574
Potassium Hydroxide 576
Potassium Metabisulfite 577
Potassium Sorbate 579
Povidone 581
Propionic Acid 586
Propyl Gallate 587
Propylene Carbonate 590
Propylene Glycol 592
Propylene Glycol Alginate 594
Propylparaben 596
Propylparaben Sodium 599
Pyrrolidone 600

R

Raffinose 603

S

Saccharin 605
Saccharin Sodium 608
Safflower Oil 610
Saponite 612
Sesame Oil 614
Shellac 616
Simethicone 619
Sodium Acetate 620
Sodium Alginate 622
Sodium Ascorbate 625
Sodium Benzoate 627
Sodium Bicarbonate 629
Sodium Borate 633
Sodium Carbonate 635
Sodium Chloride 637
Sodium Citrate Dihydrate 640
Sodium Cyclamate 643
Sodium Formaldehyde Sulfoxylate 645
Sodium Hyaluronate 646
Sodium Hydroxide 648
Sodium Lactate 650
Sodium Lauryl Sulfate 651
Sodium Metabisulfite 654
Sodium Phosphate, Dibasic 656
Sodium Phosphate, Monobasic 659
Sodium Propionate 661
Sodium Starch Glycolate 663
Sodium Stearyl Fumarate 667
Sodium Sulfite 669
Sodium Thiosulfate 671
Sorbic Acid 672
Sorbitan Esters (Sorbitan Fatty Acid Esters) 675
Sorbitol 679
Soybean Oil 682
Starch 685
Starch, Pregelatinized 691
Starch, Sterilizable Maize 695
Stearic Acid 697
Stearyl Alcohol 700
Sucralose 701
Sucrose 703
Sucrose Octaacetate 707
Sugar, Compressible 709
Sugar, Confectioner's 710
Sugar Spheres 712
Sulfobutylether β-Cyclodextrin 714
Sulfur Dioxide 718
Sulfuric Acid 719
Sunflower Oil 721
Suppository Bases, Hard Fat 722

T

Tagatose 727
Talc 728
Tartaric Acid 731
Tetrafluoroethane (HFC) 733
Thaumatin 735
Thimerosal 736
Thymol 739
Titanium Dioxide 741
Tragacanth 744

Trehalose 746
Triacetin 748
Tributyl Citrate 749
Tricaprylin 751
Triethanolamine 754
Triethyl Citrate 756
Triolein 757

V

Vanillin 760
Vegetable Oil, Hydrogenated 762
Vitamin E Polyethylene Glycol Succinate 764

W

Water 766
Wax, Anionic Emulsifying 770
Wax, Carnauba 772
Wax, Cetyl Esters 774
Wax, Microcrystalline 775
Wax, Nonionic Emulsifying 777
Wax, White 779
Wax, Yellow 780

X

Xanthan Gum 782
Xylitol 786

Z

Zein 790
Zinc Acetate 791
Zinc Stearate 793

Appendix I: Suppliers Directory 795
Appendix II: List of Excipient 'E' Numbers 847
Appendix III: List of Excipient 'EINECS' Numbers 849
Appendix IV: List of Excipient Molecular Weights 852
Index 855

Preface

Pharmaceutical dosage forms contain both pharmacologically active compounds and excipients added to aid the formulation and manufacture of the subsequent dosage form for administration to patients. Indeed, the properties of the final dosage form (i.e. its bioavailability and stability) are, for the most part, highly dependent on the excipients chosen, their concentration and interaction with both the active compound and each other. No longer can excipients be regarded simply as inert or inactive ingredients, and a detailed knowledge not only of the physical and chemical properties but also of the safety, handling and regulatory status of these materials is essential for formulators throughout the world. In addition, the growth of novel forms of delivery has resulted in an increase in the number of the excipients being used and suppliers of excipients have developed novel coprocessed excipient mixtures and new physical forms to improve their properties. The *Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients* has been conceived as a systematic, comprehensive resource of information on all of these topics.

The first edition of the *Handbook* was published in 1986 and contained 145 monographs. This was followed by the second edition in 1994 containing 203 monographs, the third edition in 2000 containing 210 monographs and the fourth edition in 2003 containing 249 monographs. Since 2000, the data has also been available on CD-ROM, updated annually, and from 2004 online. The fifth edition with its companion CD-ROM, *Pharmaceutical Excipients 5*, contained 300 monographs and was published in 2006. This new edition contains 340 excipient monographs with a new text design and enhanced online features, compiled by over 140 experts in pharmaceutical formulation or excipient manufacture from Australia, Europe, India, Japan, and the USA. All the monographs have been reviewed and revised in the light of current knowledge. There has been a greater emphasis on including published data from primary sources although some data from laboratory projects included in previous editions have been retained where relevant. Variations in test methodology can have significant effects on the data generated (especially in the case of the compactability of an excipient), and thus cause confusion. As a consequence, the editors have been more selective in including data relating to the physical properties of an excipient. However, comparative data that show differences between either source or batch of a specific excipient have been retained as this was considered relevant to the behavior of a material in practice. Over the past few years, there has been an increased emphasis on the harmonization of excipients. For information on the current status for each excipient selected for harmonization, the reader is directed to the General Information Chapter <1196> in the USP32–NF27, the General Chapter 5.8 in PhEur 6.0, along with the 'State of Work' document on the PhEur EDQM website (http://www.edq-m.eu), and also the General Information Chapter 8 in the JP XV. The Suppliers Directory (Appendix I) has also been completely updated with many more international suppliers included.

In a systematic and uniform manner, the *Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients* collects essential data on the physical properties of excipients such as: boiling point, bulk and tap density, compression characteristics, hygroscopicity, flowability, melting point, moisture content, moisture-absorption isotherms, particle size distribution, rheology, specific surface area, and solubility. Scanning electron microphotographs (SEMs) are also included for many of the excipients. This edition contains over 130 near-infrared (NIR) spectra specifically generated for the *Handbook*. The *Handbook* contains information from various international sources and personal observation and comments from monograph authors, steering committee members, and the editors.

All of the monographs in the *Handbook* are thoroughly cross-referenced and indexed so that excipients may be identified by either a chemical, a nonproprietary, or a trade name. Most monographs list related substances to help the formulator to develop a list of possible materials for use in a new dosage form or product. Related substances are not directly substitutable for each other but, in general, they are excipients that have been used for similar purposes in various dosage forms.

The *Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients* is a comprehensive, uniform guide to the uses, properties, and safety of pharmaceutical excipients, and is an essential reference source for those involved in the development, production, control, or regulation of pharmaceutical preparations. Since many pharmaceutical excipients are also used in other applications, the *Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients* will also be of value to persons with an interest in the formulation or production of confectionery, cosmetics, and food products.

Abbreviations

Some units, terms, and symbols are not included in this list as they are defined in the text. Common abbreviations have been omitted. The titles of journals are abbreviated according to the general style of the *Index Medicus*.

≈	approximately.
Ad	Addendum.
ADI	acceptable daily intake.
approx	approximately.
atm	atmosphere.
BAN	British Approved Name.
bp	boiling point.
BP	British Pharmacopoeia.
BS	British Standard (specification).
BSI	British Standards Institution.
cal	calorie(s).
CAS	Chemical Abstract Service.
CFC	chlorofluorocarbon.
cfu	colony-forming unit
cm	centimeter(s).
cm^2	square centimeter(s).
cm^3	cubic centimeter(s).
cmc	critical micelle concentration.
CNS	central nervous system.
cP	centipoise(s).
cSt	centistoke(s).
CTFA	Cosmetic, Toiletry, and Fragrance Association.
d	particle diameter (d_{10} at 10 percentile; d_{50} at 50 percentile; d_{90} at 90 percentile).
D&C	designation applied in USA to dyes permitted for use in drugs and cosmetics.
DoH	Department of Health (UK).
DSC	differential scanning calorimetry.
EC	European Community.
e.g.	*exemplit gratia*, 'for example'.
EINECS	European Inventory of Existing Commercial Chemical Substances.
et al	*et alii*, 'and others'.
EU	European Union.
FAO	Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.
FAO/WHO	Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations *and the* World Health Organization.
FCC	Food Chemicals Codex.
FDA	Food and Drug Administration of the USA.
FD&C	designation applied in USA to dyes permitted for use in foods, drugs, and cosmetics.
FFBE	Flat face beveled edge.
g	gram(s).
GMP	Good Manufacturing Practice.
GRAS	generally recognized as safe by the Food and Drug Administration of the USA.
HC	hydrocarbon.
HCFC	hydrochlorofluorocarbon.
HFC	hydrofluorocarbon.
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus.
HLB	hydrophilic–lipophilic balance.
HSE	Health and Safety Executive (UK).
i.e.	*id est*, 'that is'.
IM	intramuscular.
INN	International Nonproprietary Name.
IP	intraperitoneal.
ISO	International Organization for Standardization.
IU	International Units.
IV	intravenous.
J	joule(s).
JP	Japanese Pharmacopeia.
JPE	Japanese Pharmaceutical Excipients
kcal	kilocalorie(s).
kg	kilogram(s).
kJ	kilojoule(s).
kPa	kilopascal(s).
L	liter(s).
LAL	*Limulus* amoebocyte lysate.
LC_{50}	a concentration in air lethal to 50% of the specified animals on inhalation.
LD_{50}	a dose lethal to 50% of the specified animals or microorganisms.
Ld_{Lo}	lowest lethal dose for the specified animals or microorganisms.
m	meter(s).
m^2	square meter(s).
m^3	cubic meter(s).
M	molar.
max	maximum.
MCA	Medicines Control Agency (UK).
mg	milligram(s).
MIC	minimum inhibitory concentration.
min	minute(s) *or* minimum.
mL	milliliter(s).
mm	millimeter(s).
mM	millimolar.
mm^2	square millimeter(s).
mm^3	cubic millimeter(s).
mmHg	millimeter(s) of mercury.
mmol	millimole(s).
mN	millinewton(s).
mol	mole(s).
mp	melting point.
mPa	millipascal(s).
MPa	megapascal(s).
µg	microgram(s).
µm	micrometer(s).
N	newton(s) *or* normal (concentration).
NIR	near-infrared.
nm	nanometer(s).
o/w	oil-in-water.
o/w/o	oil-in-water-in-oil.
Pa	pascal(s).
pH	the negative logarithm of the hydrogen ion concentration.
PhEur	European Pharmacopeia.
pK_a	the negative logarithm of the dissociation constant.
pph	parts per hundred.
ppm	parts per million.
psia	pounds per square inch absolute.
R	reflectance.
RDA	recommended dietary allowance (USA).
rpm	revolutions per minute.
s	second(s).
SC	subcutaneous.
SEM	scanning electron microscopy *or* scanning electron microphotograph.

SI	Statutory Instrument *or* Système International d'Unites (International System of Units).
TD_{Lo}	lowest toxic dose for the specified animals or microorganisms.
TPN	total parental nutrition.
TWA	time weighted average.
UK	United Kingdom.
US *or* USA	United States of America.
USAN	United States Adopted Name.
USP	The United States Pharmacopeia.
USP–NF	The United States Pharmacopeia National Formulary.
UV	ultraviolet.
v/v	volume in volume.
v/w	volume in weight.
WHO	World Health Organization.
w/o	water-in-oil.
w/o/w	water-in-oil-in-water.
w/v	weight in volume.
w/w	weight in weight.

14 Safety

Hydrogenated castor oil is used in oral and topical pharmaceutical formulations and is generally regarded as an essentially nontoxic and nonirritant material.

Acute oral toxicity studies in animals have shown that hydrogenated castor oil is a relatively nontoxic material. Irritation tests with rabbits show that hydrogenated castor oil causes mild, transient irritation to the eye.

LD_{50} (rat, oral): >10 g/kg

15 Handling Precautions

Observe normal precautions appropriate to the circumstances and quantity of material handled.

16 Regulatory Status

Accepted in the USA as an indirect food additive. Included in the FDA Inactive Ingredients Database (oral capsules, tablets, and sublingual tablets).

Included in nonparenteral medicines licensed in the UK. Included in the Canadian List of Acceptable Non-medicinal Ingredients.

17 Related Substances

Castor oil; vegetable oil, hydrogenated.

18 Comments

Various different grades of hydrogenated castor oil are commercially available, the composition of which may vary considerably. *Sterotex K* (Karlshamns Lipid Specialities), for example, is a mixture of hydrogenated castor oil and hydrogenated cottonseed oil. *See* Vegetable Oil, hydrogenated for further information.

The EINECS number for hydrogenated castor oil is 232-292-2.

19 Specific References

1 Kline CH. Thixcin R-thixotrope. *Drug Cosmet Ind* 1964; **95**(6): 895–897.
2 Yonezawa Y *et al*. Release from or through a wax matrix system. III: Basic properties of release through the wax matrix layer. *Chem Pharm Bull (Tokyo)* 2002; **50**(6): 814–817.
3 Vergote GJ *et al*. An oral controlled release matrix pellet formulation containing microcrystalline ketoprofen. *Int J Pharm* 2002; **219**: 81–87.
4 Danish FQ, Parrott EL. Effect of concentration and size of lubricant on flow rate of granules. *J Pharm Sci* 1971; **60**: 752–754.
5 Hölzer AW, Sjögren J. Evaluation of some lubricants by the comparison of friction coefficients and tablet properties. *Acta Pharm Suec* 1981; **18**: 139–148.

20 General References

—

21 Author

RT Guest.

22 Date of Revision

11 February 2009.

Cellulose, Microcrystalline

1 Nonproprietary Names

BP: Microcrystalline Cellulose
JP: Microcrystalline Cellulose
PhEur: Cellulose, Microcrystalline
USP-NF: Microcrystalline Cellulose

2 Synonyms

Avicel PH; *Cellets*; *Celex*; cellulose gel; hellulosum microcristallinum; *Celphere*; *Ceolus KG*; crystalline cellulose; E460; *Emcocel*; *Ethispheres*; *Fibrocel*; *MCC Sanaq*; *Pharmacel*; *Tabulose*; *Vivapur*.

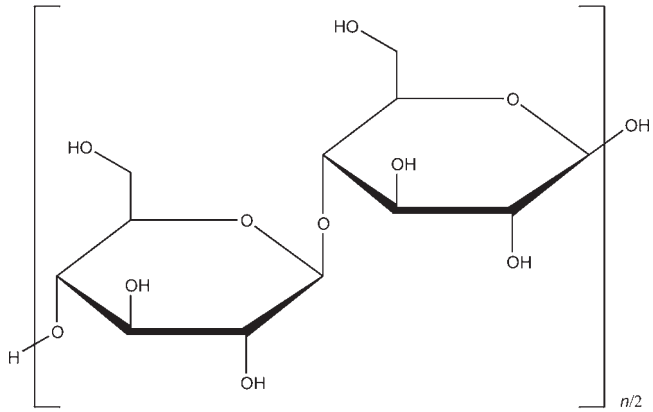
3 Chemical Name and CAS Registry Number

Cellulose [9004-34-6]

4 Empirical Formula and Molecular Weight

$(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n$ ≈36 000
where $n \approx 220$.

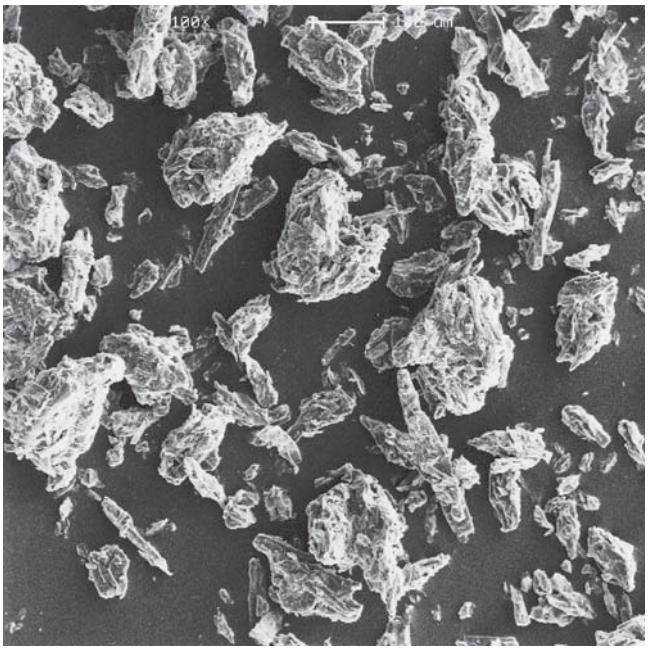
5 Structural Formula



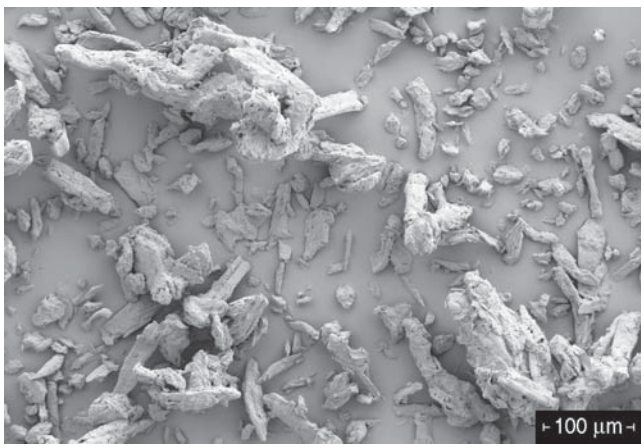
6 Functional Category

Adsorbent; suspending agent; tablet and capsule diluent; tablet disintegrant.

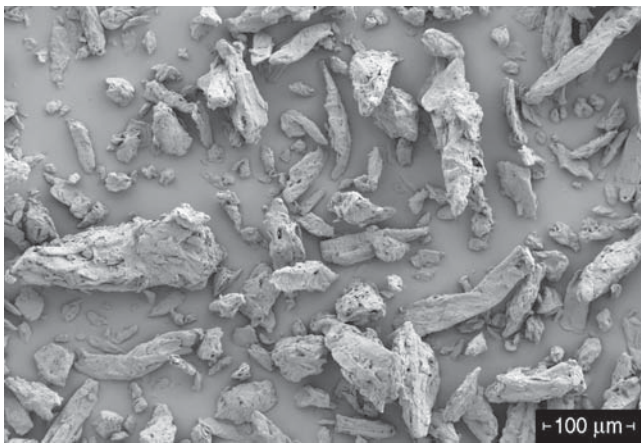
SEM 1: Excipient: microcrystalline cellulose; manufacturer: JRS Pharma LP; lot no.: 98662; magnification: 100×.



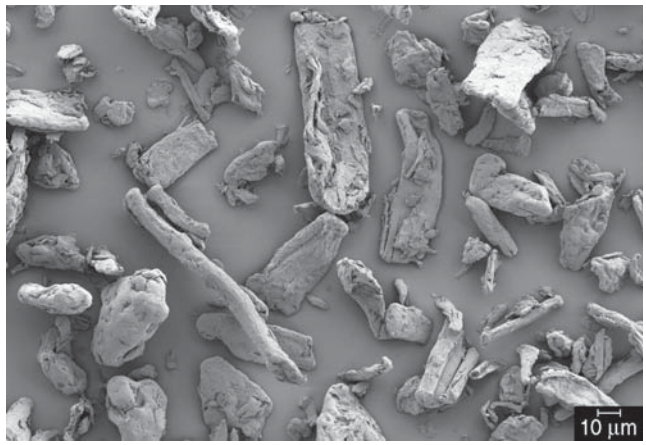
SEM 2: Excipient: microcrystalline cellulose (*Avicel PH-101*); manufacturer: FMC Biopolymer. magnification: 200×; voltage: 3 kV.



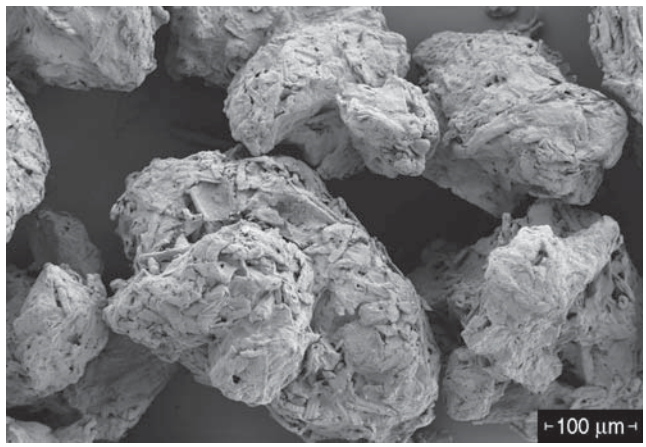
SEM 3: Excipient: microcrystalline cellulose (*Avicel PH-102*); manufacturer: FMC Biopolymer. magnification: 200×; voltage: 3 kV.



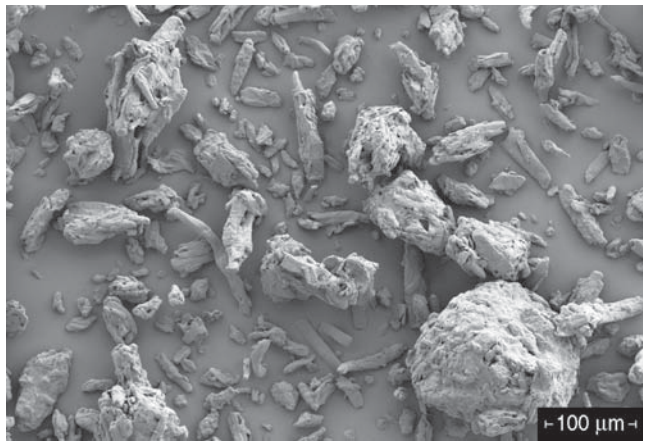
SEM 4: Excipient: microcrystalline cellulose (*Avicel PH-105*); manufacturer: FMC Biopolymer. magnification: 500×; voltage: 3 kV.



SEM 5: Excipient: microcrystalline cellulose (*Avicel PH-200*); manufacturer: FMC Biopolymer. magnification: 200×; voltage: 3 kV.



SEM 6: Excipient: microcrystalline cellulose (*Avicel PH-302*); manufacturer: FMC Biopolymer. magnification: 200×; voltage: 3 kV.



7 Applications in Pharmaceutical Formulation or Technology

Microcrystalline cellulose is widely used in pharmaceuticals, primarily as a binder/diluent in oral tablet and capsule formulations where it is used in both wet-granulation and direct-compression processes.[1–7] In addition to its use as a binder/diluent, microcrystalline cellulose also has some lubricant[8] and disintegrant properties that make it useful in tableting.

Microcrystalline cellulose is also used in cosmetics and food products; *see* Table I.

8 Description

Microcrystalline cellulose is a purified, partially depolymerized cellulose that occurs as a white, odorless, tasteless, crystalline powder composed of porous particles. It is commercially available in different particle sizes and moisture grades that have different properties and applications.

Table I: Uses of microcrystalline cellulose.

Use	Concentration (%)
Adsorbent	20–90
Antiadherent	5–20
Capsule binder/diluent	20–90
Tablet disintegrant	5–15
Tablet binder/diluent	20–90

9 Pharmacopeial Specifications

See Table II. *See also* Section 18.

Table II: Pharmacopeial specifications for microcrystalline cellulose.

Test	JP XV	PhEur 6.3	USP32–NF27
Identification	+	+	+
Characters	+	+	–
pH	5.0–7.5	5.0–7.5	5.0–7.5
Bulk density	+	–	+
Loss on drying	⩽7.0%	⩽7.0%	⩽7.0%
Residue on ignition	⩽0.1%	–	⩽0.1%
Conductivity	+	+	+
Sulfated ash	–	⩽0.1%	–
Ether-soluble substances	⩽0.05%	⩽0.05%	⩽0.05%
Water-soluble substances	+	⩽0.25%	⩽0.25%
Heavy metals	⩽10 ppm	⩽10 ppm	⩽0.001%
Microbial limits	+	+	+
Aerobic	$\leqslant 10^3$ cfu/g	$\leqslant 10^3$ cfu/g	$\leqslant 10^3$ cfu/g
Molds and yeasts	$\leqslant 10^2$ cfu/g	$\leqslant 10^2$ cfu/g	$\leqslant 10^2$ cfu/g
Solubility	–	+	–
Particle size distribution	–	–	+

10 Typical Properties

Angle of repose
49° for *Ceolus KG*;
34.4° for *Emcocel 90M*.[9]

Density (bulk)
0.337 g/cm^3;
0.32 g/cm^3 for *Avicel PH-101*;[10]
0.80 ± 5 g/cm^3 for *Cellets 100*, *200*, *350*, *500*, *700*, *1000*;
0.29 g/cm^3 for *Emcocel 90M*;[9]
0.26–0.31 g/cm^3 for *MCC Sanaq 101*;
0.28–0.33 g/cm^3 for *MCC Sanaq 102*;
0.29–0.36 g/cm^3 for *MCC Sanaq 200*;
0.34–0.45 g/cm^3 for *MCC Sanaq 301*;
0.35–0.46 g/cm^3 for *MCC Sanaq 302*;
0.13–0.23 g/cm^3 for *MCC Sanaq UL-002*;
0.29 g/cm^3 for *Vivapur 101*.

Density (tapped)
0.478 g/cm^3;
0.45 g/cm^3 for *Avicel PH-101*;
0.35 g/cm^3 for *Emcocel 90M*.[9]

Density (true) 1.512–1.668 g/cm^3;

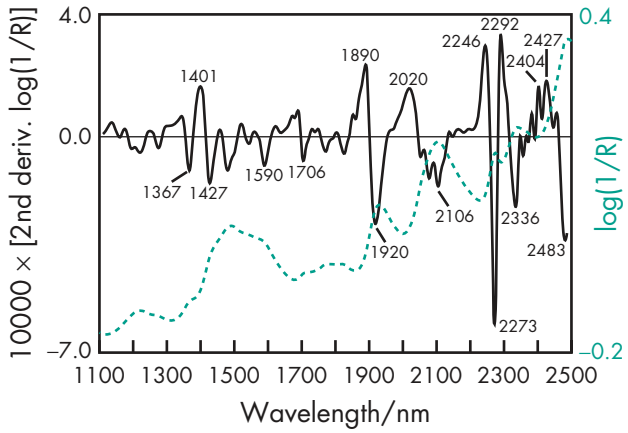


Figure 1: Near-infrared spectrum of cellulose, microcrystalline measured by reflectance.

1.420–1.460 g/cm^3 for *Avicel PH-102*.[11]

Flowability 1.41 g/s for *Emcocel 90M*.[9]

Melting point Chars at 260–270°C.

Moisture content Typically less than 5% w/w. However, different grades may contain varying amounts of water. Microcrystalline cellulose is hygroscopic.[12] *See* Table III.

NIR spectra *see* Figure 1.

Particle size distribution Typical mean particle size is 20–200 µm. Different grades may have a different nominal mean particle size; *see* Table III.

Solubility Slightly soluble in 5% w/v sodium hydroxide solution; practically insoluble in water, dilute acids, and most organic solvents.

Specific surface area
1.06–1.12 m^2/g for *Avicel PH-101*;
1.21–1.30 m^2/g for *Avicel PH-102*;
0.78–1.18 m^2/g for *Avicel PH-200*.

11 Stability and Storage Conditions

Microcrystalline cellulose is a stable though hygroscopic material. The bulk material should be stored in a well-closed container in a cool, dry place.

12 Incompatibilities

Microcrystalline cellulose is incompatible with strong oxidizing agents.

13 Method of Manufacture

Microcrystalline cellulose is manufactured by controlled hydrolysis with dilute mineral acid solutions of α-cellulose, obtained as a pulp from fibrous plant materials. Following hydrolysis, the hydrocellulose is purified by filtration and the aqueous slurry is spray-dried to form dry, porous particles of a broad size distribution.

14 Safety

Microcrystalline cellulose is widely used in oral pharmaceutical formulations and food products and is generally regarded as a relatively nontoxic and nonirritant material.

Microcrystalline cellulose is not absorbed systemically following oral administration and thus has little toxic potential. Consumption of large quantities of cellulose may have a laxative effect, although this is unlikely to be a problem when cellulose is used as an excipient in pharmaceutical formulations.

Deliberate abuse of formulations containing cellulose, either by inhalation or by injection, has resulted in the formation of cellulose granulomas.[13]

Table III: Properties of selected commercially available grades of microcrystalline cellulose.

Grade	Nominal mean particle size (μm)	Particle size analysis		Moisture content (%)
		Mesh size	Amount retained (%)	
Avicel PH-101 [(a)]	50	60	⩽1.0	⩽5.0
		200	⩽30.0	
Avicel PH-102 [(a)]	100	60	⩽8.0	⩽5.0
		200	⩾45.0	
Avicel PH-103 [(a)]	50	60	⩽1.0	⩽3.0
		200	⩽30.0	
Avicel PH-105 [(a)]	20	400	⩽1.0	⩽5.0
Avicel PH-112 [(a)]	100	60	⩽8.0	⩽1.5
Avicel PH-113 [(a)]	50	60	⩽1.0	⩽1.5
		200	⩽30.0	
Avicel PH-200 [(a)]	180	60	⩾10.0	⩽5.0
		100	⩾50.0	
Avicel PH-301 [(a)]	50	60	⩽1.0	⩽5.0
		200	⩽30.0	
Avicel PH-302 [(a)]	100	60	⩽8.0	⩽5.0
		200	⩾45.0	
Celex 101 [(b)]	75	60	⩽1.0	⩽5.0
		200	⩾30.0	
Ceolus KG-802 [(c)]	50	60	⩽0.5	⩽6.0
		200	⩽30.0	
Emcocel 50M [(d)]	50	60	⩽0.25	⩽5.0
		200	⩽30.0	
Emcocel 90M [(d)]	91	60	⩽8.0	⩽5.0
		200	⩾45.0	
MCC Sanaq 101 [(e)]	50	60	⩽1.0	⩽6.0
		200	⩽30.0	
MCC Sanaq 102 [(e)]	100	60	⩽8.0	⩽6.0
		200	⩾45.0	
MCC Sanaq 200 [(e)]	180	60	⩾10.0	⩽6.0
		100	⩾50.0	
MCC Sanaq 301 [(e)]	50	60	⩽1.0	⩽6.0
		200	⩾30.0	
MCC Sanaq 302 [(e)]	100	60	⩽8.0	⩽6.0
		200	⩾45.0	
MCC Sanaq UL-002 [(e)]	50	60	<0.5	⩽6.0
		100	<5.0	
		200	<5.0–30.0	
Vivapur 101 [(d)]	50	60	⩽1.0	⩽5.0
		200	⩽30.0	
Vivapur 102 [(d)]	90	60	⩽8.0	⩽5.0
		200	⩾45.0	
Vivapur 12 [(d)]	160	38	⩽1.0	⩽5.0
		94	⩽50.0	

Suppliers:
(a) FMC Biopolymer
(b) International Specialty Products
(c) Asahi Kasei Corporation
(d) JRS Pharma
(e) Pharmatrans Sanaq AG

15 Handling Precautions

Observe normal precautions appropriate to the circumstances and quantity of material handled. Microcrystalline cellulose may be irritant to the eyes. Gloves, eye protection, and a dust mask are recommended. In the UK, the workplace exposure limits for cellulose have been set at 10 mg/m^3 long-term (8-hour TWA) for total inhalable dust and 4 mg/m^3 for respirable dust; the short-term limit for total inhalable dust has been set at 20 mg/m^3.[14]

16 Regulatory Status

GRAS listed. Accepted for use as a food additive in Europe. Included in the FDA Inactive Ingredients Database (inhalations; oral capsules, powders, suspensions, syrups, and tablets; topical and vaginal preparations). Included in nonparenteral medicines licensed in the UK. Included in the Canadian List of Acceptable Non-medicinal Ingredients.

17 Related Substances

Microcrystalline cellulose and carrageenan; microcrystalline cellulose and carboxymethylcellulose sodium; microcrystalline cellulose and guar gum; powdered cellulose; silicified microcrystalline cellulose.

Microcrystalline cellulose and carrageenan

Synonyms *Lustre Clear.*

Comments *Lustre Clear* (FMC Biopolymer) is an aqueous film coating combining microcrystalline cellulose and carrageenan.

Microcrystalline cellulose and guar gum

Synonyms *Avicel CE-15.*

Comments *Avicel CE-15* (FMC Biopolymer) is a coprocessed mixture of microcrystalline cellulose and guar gum used in chewable tablet formulations.

18 Comments

Microcrystalline cellulose is one of the materials that have been selected for harmonization by the Pharmacopeial Discussion Group. For further information see the General Information Chapter <1196> in the USP32–NF27, the General Chapter 5.8 in PhEur 6.0, along with the 'State of Work' document on the PhEur EDQM website, and also the General Information Chapter 8 in the JP XV.

Several different grades of microcrystalline cellulose are commercially available that differ in their method of manufacture,[15,16] particle size, moisture, flow, and other physical properties.[17–29] The larger-particle-size grades generally provide better flow properties in pharmaceutical machinery. Low-moisture grades are used with moisture-sensitive materials. Higher-density grades have improved flowability.

Several coprocessed mixtures of microcrystalline cellulose with other excipients such as carrageenan, carboxymethylcellulose sodium, and guar gum are commercially available; *see* Section 17.

Celphere (Asahi Kasei Corporation) is a pure spheronized microcrystalline cellulose available in several different particle size ranges. *Balocel Sanaq* (Pharmatrans Sanaq AG) is an excipient used mainly in the production of pellets and granulates in direct tableting, which contains lactose, microcrystalline cellulose, and sodium carboxymethylcellulose.

According to PhEur 6.3, microcrystalline cellulose has certain functionality related characteristics that are recognised as being relevant control parameters for one or more functions of the substance when used as an excipient. Non-mandatory testing procedures have been described for particle size distribution (2.9.31 or 2.9.38) and powder flow (2.9.36).

A specification for microcrystalline cellulose is contained in the Food Chemicals Codex (FCC).[30] The PubChem Compound ID (CID) for microcrystalline cellulose is 14055602.

19 Specific References

1 Enézian GM. [Direct compression of tablets using microcrystalline cellulose.] *Pharm Acta Helv* 1972; **47**: 321–363[in French].
2 Lerk CF, Bolhuis GK. Comparative evaluation of excipients for direct compression I. *Pharm Weekbl* 1973; **108**: 469–481.
3 Lerk CF *et al*. Comparative evaluation of excipients for direct compression II. *Pharm Weekbl* 1974; **109**: 945–955.
4 Lamberson RF, Raynor GE. Tableting properties of microcrystalline cellulose. *Manuf Chem Aerosol News* 1976; **47**(6): 55–61.

5 Lerk CF *et al*. Effect of microcrystalline cellulose on liquid penetration in and disintegration of directly compressed tablets. *J Pharm Sci* 1979; **68**: 205–211.
6 Chilamkurti RN *et al*. Some studies on compression properties of tablet matrices using a computerized instrumented press. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1982; **8**: 63–86.
7 Wallace JW *et al*. Performance of pharmaceutical filler/binders as related to methods of powder characterization. *Pharm Technol* 1983; **7**(9): 94–104.
8 Omray A, Omray P. Evaluation of microcrystalline cellulose as a glidant. *Indian J Pharm Sci* 1986; **48**: 20–22.
9 Celik M, Okutgen E. A feasibility study for the development of a prospective compaction functionality test and the establishment of a compaction data bank. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1993; **19**: 2309–2334.
10 Parker MD *et al*. Binder–substrate interactions in wet granulation 3: the effect of excipient source variation. *Int J Pharm* 1992; **80**: 179–190.
11 Sun CC. True density of microcrystalline cellulose. *J Pharm Sci* 2005; **94**(10): 2132–2134.
12 Callahan JC *et al*. Equilibrium moisture content of pharmaceutical excipients. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1982; **8**: 355–369.
13 Cooper CB *et al*. Cellulose granulomas in the lungs of a cocaine sniffer. *Br Med J* 1983; **286**: 2021–2022.
14 Health and Safety Executive. *EH40/2005: Workplace Exposure Limits*. Sudbury: HSE Books, 2005 (updated 2007). http://www.hse.gov.uk/coshh/table1.pdf (accessed 5 February 2009).
15 Jain JK *et al*. Preparation of microcrystalline cellulose from cereal straw and its evaluation as a tablet excipient. *Indian J Pharm Sci* 1983; **45**: 83–85.
16 Singla AK *et al*. Evaluation of microcrystalline cellulose prepared from absorbent cotton as a direct compression carrier. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1988; **14**: 1131–1136.
17 Doelker E *et al*. Comparative tableting properties of sixteen microcrystalline celluloses. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1987; **13**: 1847–1875.
18 Bassam F *et al*. Effect of particle size and source on variability of Young's modulus of microcrystalline cellulose powders. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1988; **40**: 68P.
19 Dittgen M *et al*. Microcrystalline cellulose in direct tabletting. *Manuf Chem* 1993; **64**(7): 17, 19, 21.
20 Landin M *et al*. Effect of country of origin on the properties of microcrystalline cellulose. *Int J Pharm* 1993; **91**: 123–131.
21 Landin M *et al*. Effect of batch variation and source of pulp on the properties of microcrystalline cellulose. *Int J Pharm* 1993; **91**: 133–141.
22 Landin M *et al*. Influence of microcrystalline cellulose source and batch variation on tabletting behavior and stability of prednisone formulations. *Int J Pharm* 1993; **91**: 143–149.
23 Podczeck F, Révész P. Evaluation of the properties of microcrystalline and microfine cellulose powders. *Int J Pharm* 1993; **91**: 183–193.
24 Rowe RC *et al*. The effect of batch and source variation on the crystallinity of microcrystalline cellulose. *Int J Pharm* 1994; **101**: 169–172.
25 Hasegawa M. Direct compression: microcrystalline cellulose grade 12 versus classic grade 102. *Pharm Technol* 2002; **26**(5): 50, 52, 54, 56, 58, 60.
26 Kothari SH *et al*. Comparative evaluations of powder and mechanical properties of low crystallinity celluloses, microcrystalline celluloses, and powdered celluloses. *Int J Pharm* 2002; **232**: 69–80.
27 Levis SR, Deasy PB. Production and evaluation of size-reduced grades of microcrystalline cellulose. *Int J Pharm* 2001; **213**: 13–24.
28 Wu JS *et al*. A statistical design to evaluate the influence of manufacturing factors on the material properties and functionalities of microcrystalline cellulose. *Eur J Pharm Sci* 2001; **12**: 417–425.
29 Suzuki T, Nakagami H. Effect of crystallinity of microcrystalline cellulose on the compactability and dissolution of tablets. *Eur J Pharm Biopharm* 1999; **47**: 225–230.
30 *Food Chemicals Codex*, 6th edn. Bethesda, MD: United States Pharmacopeia, 2008; 187.

20 General References

Asahi Kasei Corporation. *Ceolus KG*, *Celphere*. http://www.ceolus.com (accessed 6 November 2008).
Doelker E. Comparative compaction properties of various microcrystalline cellulose types and generic products. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1993; **19**: 2399–2471.
European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines and Healthcare (EDQM). European Pharmacopoeia – State Of Work Of International Harmonisation. *Pharmeuropa* 2009; 21(1): 142–143. http://www.edqm.eu/site/-614.html (accessed 5 February 2009).
FMC Biopolymer. Problem Solver: *Avicel PH*, 2000.
International Specialty Products. Material Safety data sheet: *Celex 101*, 2003.
JRS Pharma LP. Technical literature: *Emcocel*, 2003.
Pharmatrans Sanaq AG. Product literature: *Cellets*. http://www.cellets.com (accessed 6 November 2008).
Pharmatrans Sanaq AG. Product literature: *MCC Sanaq*. http://www.pharmatrans-sanaq.com/prod.html (accessed 6 November 2008).
Smolinske SC. *Handbook of Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Excipients*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 1992; 71–74.
Staniforth JN *et al*. Effect of addition of water on the rheological and mechanical properties of microcrystalline celluloses. *Int J Pharm* 1988; **41**: 231–236.

21 Author

A Guy.

22 Date of Revision

5 February 2009.

Cellulose, Silicified Microcrystalline

1 Nonproprietary Names

None adopted.

2 Synonyms

ProSolv.

3 Chemical Name and CAS Registry Number

See Section 8.

4 Empirical Formula and Molecular Weight

See Section 8.

5 Structural Formula

See Section 8.

6 Functional Category

Tablet and capsule diluent.

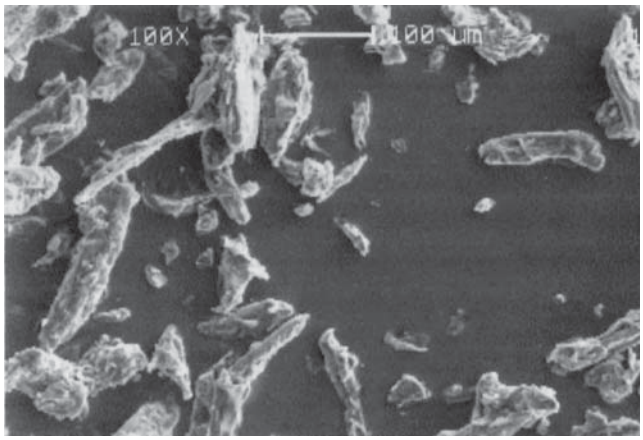
7 Applications in Pharmaceutical Formulation or Technology

Silicified microcrystalline cellulose is used as a filler in the formulation of capsules and tablets. It has improved compaction properties in both wet granulation and direct compression compared to conventional microcrystalline cellulose.[1–5] Silicified microcrystalline cellulose was specifically developed to address the loss of compaction that occurs with microcrystalline cellulose after wet granulation. Silicified microcrystalline cellulose also appears to have beneficial properties for use in the formulation of powder-filled capsules.[6,7]

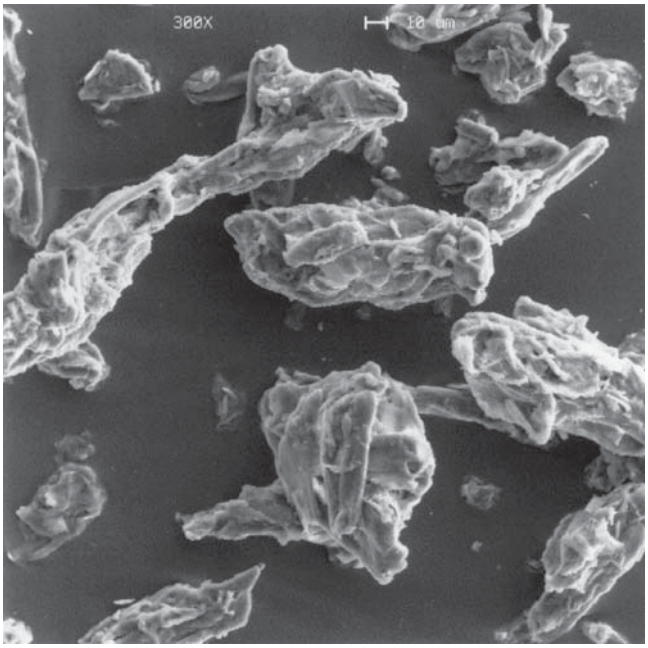
8 Description

Silicified microcrystalline cellulose is a synergistic, intimate physical mixture of two components: microcrystalline cellulose and colloidal silicon dioxide (for further information *see* Cellulose, Microcrystalline and Colloidal Silicon Dioxide). Silicified microcrystalline cellulose contains 2% w/w colloidal silicon dioxide.

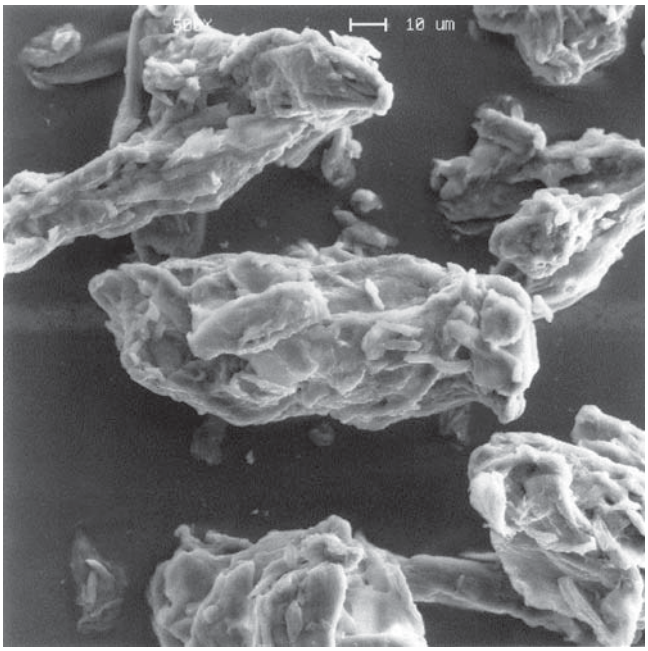
SEM 1: Excipient: silicified microcrystalline cellulose; manufacturer: JRS Pharma LP; lot no.: CSD5866; magnification: 100×.



SEM 2: Excipient: silicified microcrystalline cellulose; manufacturer: JRS Pharma LP; lot no.: CSD5866; magnification: 300×.



SEM 3: Excipient: silicified microcrystalline cellulose; manufacturer: JRS Pharma LP; lot no.: CSD5866; magnification: 500×.



9 Pharmacopeial Specifications

Both colloidal silicon dioxide and microcrystalline cellulose are listed as separate monographs in the JP, PhEur, and USP–NF, but the combination is not listed. *See* Cellulose, Microcrystalline and Colloidal Silicon Dioxide. *See also* Section 18.

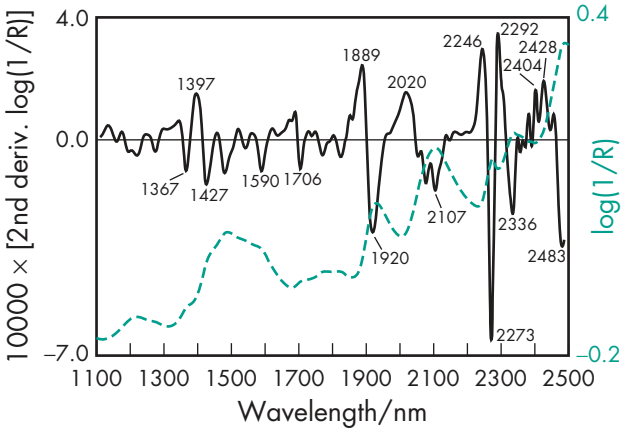


Figure 1: Near-infrared spectrum of silicified microcrystalline cellulose measured by reflectance.

10 Typical properties

Acidity/alkalinity pH = 5.0–7.5 (10% w/v suspension)
Density 1.58 g/cm[5]
Density (bulk) 0.31 g/cm^3
Density (tapped) 0.39 g/cm[5]
Melting point The microcrystalline cellulose component chars at 260–270°C.
Moisture content Typically less than 6% w/w.
NIR spectra *see* Figure 1.
Particle size distribution Typical particle size is 20–200 µm. Different grades may have a different normal mean particle size.
Solubility Practically insoluble in water, dilute acids, and most organic solvents. The microcrystalline cellulose component is slightly soluble in 5% w/w sodium hydroxide solution.

11 Stability and Storage Conditions

Silicified microcrystalline cellulose is stable when stored in a well-closed container in a cool, dry place.

12 Incompatibilities

See Cellulose, Microcrystalline and Colloidal Silicon Dioxide.

13 Method of Manufacture

Silicified microcrystalline cellulose is manufactured by co-drying a suspension of microcrystalline cellulose particles and colloidal silicon dioxide such that the dried finished product contains 2% w/w colloidal silicon dioxide.

The colloidal silicon dioxide appears physically bound onto the surface and inside the silicified microcrystalline cellulose particles. Extensive studies using different spectroscopic methods have failed to show any form of chemical interaction.[4,8,9]

14 Safety

See Cellulose, Microcrystalline and Colloidal Silicon Dioxide.

15 Handling Precautions

Observe normal precautions appropriate to the circumstances and quantity of material handled. Handling of silicified microcrystalline cellulose can generate nuisance dusts and the use of a respirator or dust mask may be necessary.

Microcrystalline cellulose may be irritant to the eyes. Gloves, eye protection, and a dust mask are recommended. In the UK the long-term workplace exposure limits (8-hour TWA) have been set at 10 mg/m^3 for total inhalable dust and 4 mg/m^3 for respirable dust; short-term limit for total inhalable dust has been set at 20 mg/m^3.[10]

Since the colloidal silicon dioxide is physically bound to the microcrystalline cellulose the general recommendations of gloves, eye protection, and a dust mask should be followed when handling silicified microcrystalline cellulose.

16 Regulatory Status

Silicified microcrystalline cellulose is a physical mixture of two materials both of which are generally regarded as nontoxic:

Microcrystalline cellulose GRAS listed. Included in the FDA Inactive Ingredients Database (inhalations, oral capsules, powders, suspensions, syrups, and tablets). Included in nonparenteral medicines licensed in Europe and the USA. Included in the Canadian List of Acceptable Non-medicinal Ingredients.

Colloidal silicon dioxide GRAS listed. Included in the FDA Inactive Ingredients Database (oral capsules and tablets). Included in nonparenteral medicines licensed in Europe and the USA. Included in the Canadian List of Acceptable Non-medicinal Ingredients.

17 Related Substances

Cellulose, microcrystalline; colloidal silicon dioxide.

18 Comments

Colloidal silicon dioxide and microcrystalline cellulose are two of the materials that have been selected for harmonization by the Pharmacopeial Discussion Group. For further information see the General Information Chapter <1196> in the USP32–NF27, the General Chapter 5.8 in PhEur 6.0, along with the 'State of Work' document on the PhEur EDQM website, and also the General Information Chapter 8 in the JP XV.

Silicified microcrystalline cellulose has greater tensile strength and requires lower compression pressures than regular grades of microcrystalline cellulose. Furthermore, silicified microcrystalline cellulose maintains its compactability after wet granulation; the compacts exhibit greater stiffness and they require considerably more energy for tensile failure to occur.[4,11,12]

19 Specific References

1 Sherwood BE *et al*. Silicified microcrystalline cellulose (SMCC): a new class of high functionality binders for direct compression. *Pharm Res* 1996; **13**(9): S197.
2 Staniforth JN *et al*. Towards a new class of high functionality tablet binders. II: silicified microcrystalline cellulose (SMCC). *Pharm Res* 1996; **13**(9): S197.
3 Tobyn MJ *et al*. Compaction studies on a new class of high functionality binders: silicified microcrystalline cellulose (SMCC). *Pharm Res* 1996; **13**(9): S198.
4 Habib SY *et al*. Is silicified wet-granulated microcrystalline cellulose better than original wet-granulated microcrystalline cellulose? *Pharm Dev Technol* 1999; **4**(3): 431–437.
5 Tobyn MJ *et al*. Physiochemical comparison between microcrystalline cellulose and silicified microcrystalline cellulose. *Int J Pharm* 1998; **169**: 183–194.
6 Guo M *et al*. Evaluation of the plug information process of silicified microcrystalline cellulose. *Int J Pharm* 2002; **233**: 99–109.
7 Guo M, Augsburger LL. Potential application of silicified microcrystalline cellulose in direct-fill formulations for capsule-filling machines. *Pharm Dev Technol* 2003; **8**: 47–59.
8 Edge S *et al*. The mechanical properties of compacts of microcrystalline cellulose and silicified microcrystalline cellulose. *Int J Pharm* 2000; **200**: 67–72.
9 Buckton G, Yonemochi E. Near IR spectroscopy to quantify the silica content and differences between silicified miicrocrystalline cellulose and physical mixtures of microcrystalline cellulose and silica. *Eur J Pharm Sci* 2000; **10**(1): 77–80.
10 Health and Safety Executive. *EH40/2005: Workplace Exposure Limits*. Sudbury: HSE Books, 2005 (updated 2007). http://www.hse.gov.uk/coshh/table1.pdf (accessed 5 February 2009).

11 Buckton G *et al*. Water sorption and near IR spectroscopy to study the differences between microcrystalline cellulose and silicified microcrystalline cellulose after wet granulation. *Int J Pharm* 1999; **181**: 41–47.
12 Mužíková J, Nováková P. A study of the properties of compacts from silicified microcrystalline cellulose. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 2007; **33**: 775–781.

20 General References

European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines and Healthcare (EDQM). European Pharmacopoeia – State Of Work Of International Harmonisation. *Pharmeuropa* 2009; 21(1): 142–143. http://www.edqm.eu/site/-614.html (accessed 3 February 2009).
Li JX *et al*. Characterization of wet masses of pharmaceutical powders by triaxial compression test. *J Pharm Sci* 2000; **89**(2): 178–190.
Staniforth JN *et al*. Pharmaceutical excipient having improved compressibility. US Patent 5,585,115, 1996.

21 Author

RC Moreton.

22 Date of Revision

5 February 2009.

Cellulose Acetate

1 Nonproprietary Names

BP: Cellulose Acetate
PhEur: Cellulose Acetate
USP-NF: Cellulose Acetate

2 Synonyms

Acetic acid, cellulose ester; acetyl cellulose; cellulose diacetate; cellulose triacetate; cellulosi acetas.

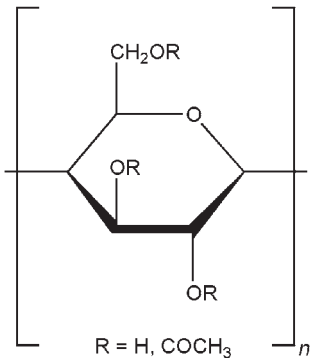
3 Chemical Name and CAS Registry Number

Cellulose acetate [9004-35-7]
Cellulose diacetate [9035-69-2]
Cellulose triacetate [9012-09-3]

4 Empirical Formula and Molecular Weight

Cellulose acetate is cellulose in which a portion or all of the hydroxyl groups are acetylated. Cellulose acetate is available in a wide range of acetyl levels and chain lengths and thus molecular weights; *see* Table I.

5 Structural Formula



6 Functional Category

Coating agent; extended-release agent; tablet and capsule diluent.

7 Applications in Pharmaceutical Formulation or Technology

Cellulose acetate is widely used in pharmaceutical formulations both in sustained-release applications and for taste masking.

Cellulose acetate is used as a semipermeable coating on tablets, especially on osmotic pump-type tablets and implants. This allows for controlled, extended release of actives.[1–5] Cellulose acetate films, in conjunction with other materials, also offer sustained release without the necessity of drilling a hole in the coating as is typical with osmotic pump systems. Cellulose acetate and other cellulose esters have also been used to form drug-loaded microparticles with controlled-release characteristics.[6–8]

Cellulose acetate films are used in transdermal drug delivery systems[9,10] and also as film coatings on tablets[11] or granules for taste masking. For example, acetaminophen granules have been coated with a cellulose acetate-based coating before being processed to provide chewable tablets. Extended-release tablets can also be formulated with cellulose acetate as a directly compressible matrix former.[2] The release profile can be modified by changing the ratio of active to cellulose acetate and by incorporation of plasticizer, but was shown to be insensitive to cellulose acetate molecular weight and particle size distribution.

Therapeutically, cellulose acetate has been used to treat cerebral aneurysms, and also for spinal perimedullary arteriovenous fistulas.[12]

8 Description

Cellulose acetate occurs as a hygroscopic white to off-white, free-flowing powder, pellet, or flake. It is tasteless and odorless, or may have a slight odor of acetic acid.

9 Pharmacopeial Specifications

See Table II. *See also* Section 18.

10 Typical Properties

Density (bulk) Typically 0.4 g/cm^3 for powders.
Glass transition temperature 170–190°C
Melting point Melting range 230–300°C
NIR spectra *see* Figure 1.
Solubility The solubility of cellulose acetate is greatly influenced by the level of acetyl groups present. In general, cellulose acetates are soluble in acetone–water blends of varying ratios, dichloromethane–ethanol blends, dimethyl formamide, and dioxane.

It has been shown that the increased force required to expel coconut oil from plastic syringes was due to uptake of the oil into the rubber plunger; this resulted in swelling of the rubber plunger and an increased resistance to movement down the syringe barrel.[12]

13 Method of Manufacture

Coconut oil is the fixed oil obtained from the seeds of *Cocos nucifera* Linn. (Palmae). This oil is then refined to produce refined coconut oil, which is referred to in the coconut industry as RBD (refined, bleached, and deodorized) coconut oil.

14 Safety

When administered orally, coconut oil is essentially nontoxic, although ingestion of large amounts may cause digestive or gastrointestinal irritation or upset. Coconut oil can act as an irritant when applied to the skin and when in contact with the eyes; it may be absorbed through the skin. Inhalation of mist or vapor may cause respiratory tract irritation.

15 Handling Precautions

Observe normal precautions appropriate to the circumstances and quantity of the material handled. Coconut oil should be kept away from heat and sources of ignition, and contact with oxidizing agents, acids, and alkalis should be avoided.

If in the solid form, large spillages of coconut oil should be dealt with by shoveling the material into a waste disposal container. For liquid spillages, the oil should be absorbed with an inert material before removal for disposal.

16 Regulatory Status

Included in the FDA Inactive Ingredients Database (oral capsules and tablets; topical creams, solutions, and ointments). Included in scalp ointments and therapeutic shampoos licensed in the UK.

17 Related Substances

Almond oil; canola oil; castor oil; castor oil, hydrogenated; corn oil; cottonseed oil; medium-chain triglycerides; olive oil; peanut oil; sesame oil; soybean oil; sunflower oil.

18 Comments

A specification for coconut oil (unhydrogenated) is contained in the Food Chemicals Codex (FCC).[13]

19 Specific References

1 Hung CF *et al*. The effect of oil components on the physicochemical properties and drug delivery of emulsions: tocol emulsion versus lipid emulsion. *Int J Pharm* 2007; **335**(1–2): 193–202.
2 Garti N, Arkad O. Preparation of cloudy coconut oil emulsions containing dispersed TiO_2 using atomizer. *J Dispersion Sci Technol* 1986; **7**(5): 513–523.
3 Fang JY *et al*. Lipid nano/submicron emulsions as delivery vehicles for topical flurbiprofen delivery. *Drug Deliv* 2004; **11**(2): 97–105.
4 Nielsen HW *et al*. Intranasal administration of different liquid formulations of bumetanide to rabbits. *Int J Pharm* 2000; **204**(1–2): 35–41.
5 Tanabe K *et al*. Effect of different suppository bases on release of indomethacin. *J Pharm Sci Technol Jpn* 1984; **44**: 115–120.
6 Broda H *et al*. Preparation and testing of suppositories with cephradine – evaluation of pharmaceutical availability and biological availability. *Farm Pol* 1993; **49**(11–12): 1–8.
7 Ogbolu DO *et al*. *In vitro* antimicrobial properties of of coconut oil on *Candida* species in Ibadan, Nigeria. *J Med Food* 2007; **10**(2): 384–387.
8 Anonymous. Nitlotion. *Pharm J* 2000; **265**: 345.
9 Pajoumand A *et al*. Survival following severe aluminium phosphide poisoning. *J Pharm Pract Res* 2002; **32**(4): 297–299.
10 Patel HR. Sales of coconut oil. *Pharm J* 1992; **249**: 252.
11 Todd RG, Wade A, eds. *The Pharmaceutical Codex*, 11th edn. London: Pharmaceutical Press, 1979; 214.
12 Dexter MB, Shott MJ. The evaluation of the force to expel oily injection vehicles from syringes. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1979; **31**: 497–500.
13 *Food Chemicals Codex*, 6th edn. Bethesda, MD: United States Pharmacopiea, 2008; 222.

20 General References

—

21 Author

CG Cable.

22 Date of Revision

27 February 2009.

Colloidal Silicon Dioxide

1 Nonproprietary Names

BP: Colloidal Anhydrous Silica
JP: Light Anhydrous Silicic Acid
PhEur: Silica, Colloidal Anhydrous
USP-NF: Colloidal Silicon Dioxide

2 Synonyms

Aerosil; *Cab-O-Sil*; *Cab-O-Sil M-5P*; colloidal silica; fumed silica; fumed silicon dioxide; hochdisperses silicum dioxid; SAS; silica colloidalis anhydrica; silica sol; silicic anhydride; silicon dioxide colloidal; silicon dioxide fumed; synthetic amorphous silica; *Wacker HDK*.

3 Chemical Name and CAS Registry Number

Silica [7631-86-9]

4 Empirical Formula and Molecular Weight

SiO_2 60.08

5 Structural Formula

See Section 4.

6 Functional Category

Adsorbent; anticaking agent; emulsion stabilizer; glidant; suspending agent; tablet disintegrant; thermal stabilizer; viscosity-increasing agent.

C

7 Applications in Pharmaceutical Formulation or Technology

Colloidal silicon dioxide is widely used in pharmaceuticals, cosmetics, and food products; *see* Table I. Its small particle size and large specific surface area give it desirable flow characteristics that are exploited to improve the flow properties of dry powders[1] in a number of processes such as tableting[2–4] and capsule filling.

Colloidal silicon dioxide is also used to stabilize emulsions and as a thixotropic thickening and suspending agent in gels and semisolid preparations.[5] With other ingredients of similar refractive index, transparent gels may be formed. The degree of viscosity increase depends on the polarity of the liquid (polar liquids generally require a greater concentration of colloidal silicon dioxide than nonpolar liquids). Viscosity is largely independent of temperature. However, changes to the pH of a system may affect the viscosity; *see* Section 11.

In aerosols, other than those for inhalation, colloidal silicon dioxide is used to promote particulate suspension, eliminate hard settling, and minimize the clogging of spray nozzles. Colloidal silicon dioxide is also used as a tablet disintegrant and as an adsorbent dispersing agent for liquids in powders.[6] Colloidal silicon dioxide is frequently added to suppository formulations containing lipophilic excipients to increase viscosity, prevent sedimentation during molding, and decrease the release rate.[7,8] Colloidal silicon dioxide is also used as an adsorbent during the preparation of wax microspheres;[9] as a thickening agent for topical preparations;[10] and has been used to aid the freeze-drying of nanocapsules and nanosphere suspensions.[11]

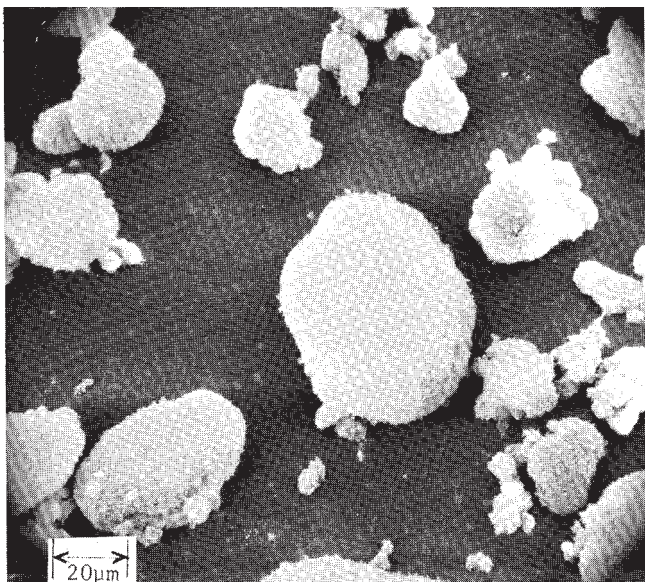
Table I: Uses of colloidal silicon dioxide.

Use	Concentration (%)
Aerosols	0.5–2.0
Emulsion stabilizer	1.0–5.0
Glidant	0.1–1.0
Suspending and thickening agent	2.0–10.0

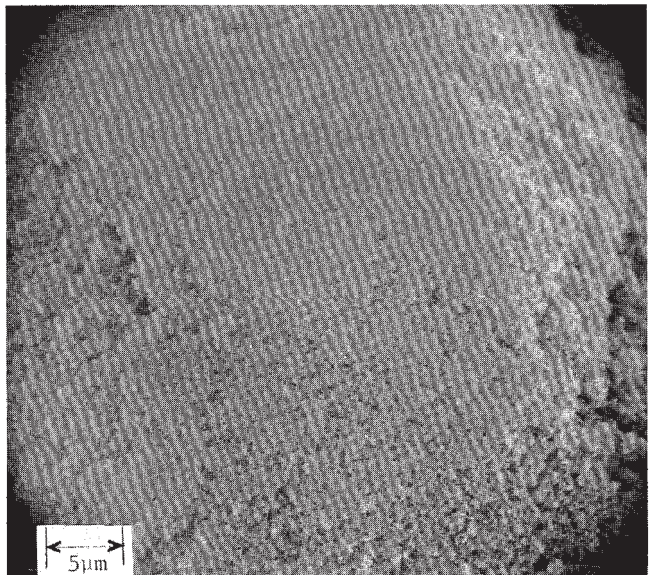
8 Description

Colloidal silicon dioxide is a submicroscopic fumed silica with a particle size of about 15 nm. It is a light, loose, bluish-white-colored, odorless, tasteless, amorphous powder.

SEM 1: Excipient: colloidal silicon dioxide (*Aerosil A-200*); manufacturer: Evonik Degussa Corp. lot no.: 87A-1 (04169C); magnification: 600×; voltage: 20 kV.



SEM 2: Excipient: colloidal silicon dioxide (*Aerosil A-200*); manufacturer: Evonik Degussa Corp. lot no.: 87A-1 (04169C); magnification: 2400×; voltage: 20 kV.



9 Pharmacopeial Specifications

See Table II. *See also* Section 18.

Table II: Pharmacopeial specifications for colloidal silicon dioxide.

Test	JP XV	PhEur 6.0	USP32–NF27
Identification	+	+	+
Characters	—	+	—
pH (4% w/v dispersion)	—	3.5–5.5	3.5–5.5
Arsenic	⩽5 ppm	—	⩽8 µg/g
Chloride	⩽0.011%	⩽250 ppm	—
Heavy metals	⩽40 ppm	⩽25 ppm	—
Aluminum	+	—	—
Calcium	+	—	—
Iron	⩽500 ppm	—	—
Loss on drying	⩽7.0%	—	⩽2.5%
Loss on ignition	⩽12.0%	⩽5.0%	⩽2.0%
Volume test (5 g sample)	⩾70 mL	—	—
Assay (on ignited sample)	⩾98.0%	99.0–100.5%	99.0–100.5%

10 Typical Properties

Acidity/alkalinity pH = 3.8–4.2 (4% w/v aqueous dispersion) and 3.5–4.0 (10% w/v aqueous dispersion) for *Cab-O-Sil M-5P*

Density (bulk) 0.029–0.042 g/cm^3

Density (tapped) *see* Tables III, IV, and V.

Melting point 1600°C

Moisture content *see* Figure 1.[12,13]

Particle size distribution Primary particle size is 7–16 nm. *Aerosil* forms loose agglomerates of 10–200 µm. *See also* Figure 2.

Refractive index 1.46

Solubility Practically insoluble in organic solvents, water, and acids, except hydrofluoric acid; soluble in hot solutions of alkali hydroxide. Forms a colloidal dispersion with water. For *Aerosil*, solubility in water is 150 mg/L at 25°C (pH 7).

Specific gravity 2.2

Specific surface area

100–400 m^2/g depending on grade. *See also* Tables III, IV,and V.

Several grades of colloidal silicon dioxide are commercially available, which are produced by modifying the manufacturing process. The modifications do not affect the silica content,

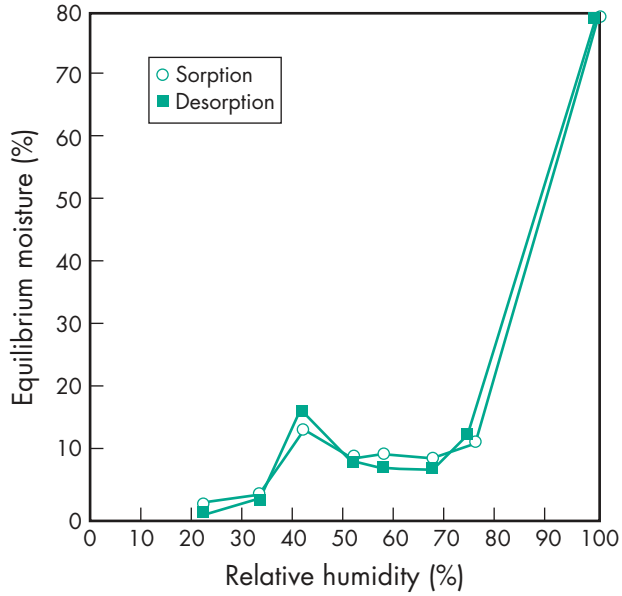


Figure 1: Sorption–desorption isotherm for colloidal silicon dioxide.

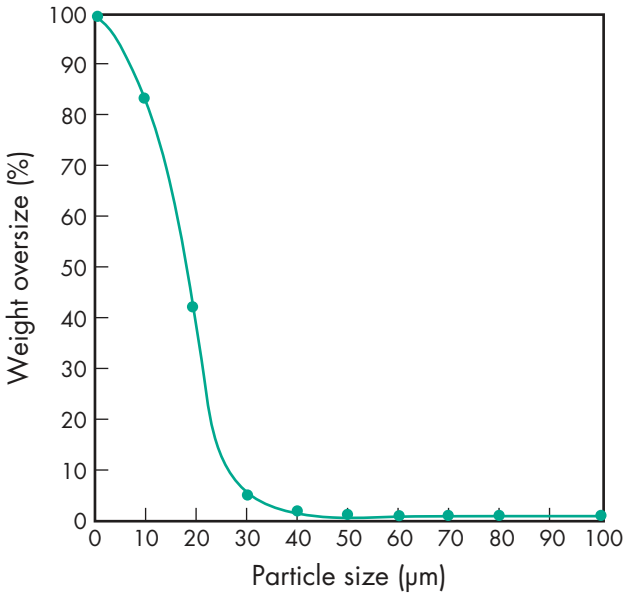


Figure 2: Particle size distribution of colloidal silicon dioxide (*Aerosil A-200*, Evonik Degussa Corp.).

specific gravity, refractive index, color, or amorphous form. However, particle size, surface areas, and densities are affected. The physical properties of three commercially available colloidal silicon dioxides, *Aerosil* (Evonik Degussa Corp.), *Cab-O-Sil* (Cabot Corporation), and *Wacker HDK* (Wacker-Chemie GmbH) are shown in Tables III, IV and V, respectively.

11 Stability and Storage Conditions

Colloidal silicon dioxide is hygroscopic but adsorbs large quantities of water without liquefying. When used in aqueous systems at a pH 0–7.5, colloidal silicon dioxide is effective in increasing the viscosity of a system. However, at a pH greater than 7.5 the viscosity-increasing properties of colloidal silicon dioxide are reduced; and at a pH greater than 10.7 this ability is lost entirely since the silicon dioxide dissolves to form silicates.[14] Colloidal silicon dioxide powder should be stored in a well-closed container.

Table III: Physical properties of *Aerosil*.

Grade	Specific surface area[a] (m^2/g)	Density (tapped) (g/cm^3)
130	130 ± 25	0.05
130v	130 ± 25	0.12
200	200 ± 25	0.05
200v	200 ± 25	0.12
300	300 ± 30	0.05
300	300 ± 30	0.12
380	380 ± 30	0.05
380	380 ± 30	0.12

(a) BET method.

Table IV: Physical properties of *Cab-O-Sil*.

Grade	Specific surface area[a] (m^2/g)	Density (tapped) (g/cm^3)
LM-5	130 ± 25	0.04
LM-50	150 ± 25	0.04
M-5	200 ± 25	0.04
H-5	325 ± 25	0.04
EH-5	390 ± 40	0.04
M-7D	200 ± 25	0.10

(a) BET method.

Table V: Physical properties of *Wacker HDK*.

Grade	Specific surface area[a] (m^2/g)	Density (tapped) (g/cm^3)
S13	125 ± 15	0.05
V15	150 ± 20	0.05
N20	200 ± 30	0.04
T30	300 ± 30	0.04
T40	400 ± 40	0.04
H15	120 ± 20	0.04
H20	170 ± 30	0.04
H30	250 ± 30	0.04
H2000	140 ± 30	0.22
H3004	210 ± 30	0.08
H2015	110 ± 30	0.20
H2050	110 ± 30	0.20

(a) BET method.

12 Incompatibilities

Incompatible with diethylstilbestrol preparations.[15]

13 Method of Manufacture

Colloidal silicon dioxide is prepared by the flame hydrolysis of chlorosilanes, such as silicon tetrachloride, at 1800°C using a hydrogen–oxygen flame. Rapid cooling from the molten state during manufacture causes the product to remain amorphous.

14 Safety

Colloidal silicon dioxide is widely used in oral and topical pharmaceutical products and is generally regarded as an essentially nontoxic and nonirritant excipient. However, intraperitoneal and subcutaneous injection may produce local tissue reactions and/or granulomas. Colloidal silicon dioxide should therefore not be administered parenterally.

LD_{50} (rat, IV): 0.015 g/kg[16]

LD_{50} (rat, oral): 3.16 g/kg

C

15 Handling Precautions

Observe normal precautions appropriate to the circumstances and quantity of material handled. Eye protection and gloves are recommended. Considered a nuisance dust, precautions should be taken to avoid inhalation of colloidal silicon dioxide. In the absence of suitable containment facilities, a dust mask should be worn when handling small quantities of material. For larger quantities, a dust respirator is recommended.

Inhalation of colloidal silicon dioxide dust may cause irritation to the respiratory tract but it is not associated with fibrosis of the lungs (silicosis), which can occur upon exposure to crystalline silica.

16 Regulatory Acceptance

GRAS listed. Included in the FDA Inactive Ingredients Database (oral capsules, suspensions, and tablets; transdermal, rectal, and vaginal preparations). Also approved by the FDA as a food additive and for food contact. Included in nonparenteral medicines licensed in the UK. Included in the Canadian List of Acceptable Non-medicinal Ingredients.

17 Related Substances

Hydrophobic colloidal silica.

18 Comments

Colloidal silicon dioxide is one of the materials that have been selected for harmonization by the Pharmacopeial Discussion Group. For further information see the General Information Chapter <1196> in the USP32–NF27, the General Chapter 5.8 in PhEur 6.0, along with the 'State of Work' document on the PhEur EDQM website, and also the General Information Chapter 8 in the JP XV.

The PhEur 6.0 also contains a specification for hydrated colloidal silicon dioxide. The incidence of microbial contamination of colloidal silicon dioxide is low[17] due to the high production temperatures and inorganic precursor materials.

Note that porous silica gel particles may also be used as a glidant, thickener, dispersant and to adsorb moisture, which may be an advantage for some formulations. *Syloid 244FP* meets the USP–NF requirements for silicon dioxide, and *Syloid 244 FP-BU* meets the PhEur and JP requirements for silicon dioxide.[18]

Another CAS number that is used for colloidal silicon dioxide is 112945-52-5.

The EINECS number for colloidal silicon dioxide is 231-545-4. The PubChem Compound ID (CID) for colloidal silicon dioxide is 24261.

19 Specific References

1 York P. Application of powder failure testing equipment in assessing effect of glidants on flowability of cohesive pharmaceutical powders. *J Pharm Sci* 1975; **64**: 1216–1221.
2 Lerk CF *et al*. Interaction of lubricants and colloidal silica during mixing with excipients I: its effect on tabletting. *Pharm Acta Helv* 1977; **52**: 33–39.
3 Lerk CF, Bolhuis GK. Interaction of lubricants and colloidal silica during mixing with excipients II: its effect on wettability and dissolution velocity. *Pharm Acta Helv* 1977; **52**: 39–44.
4 Jonat S *et al*. Influence of compacted hydrophobic and hydrophilic colloidal silicon dioxide on tabletting properties of pharmaceutical excipients. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 2005; **31**: 687–696.
5 Daniels R *et al*. The stability of drug absorbates on silica. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1986; **12**: 2127–2156.
6 Sherriff M, Enever RP. Rheological and drug release properties of oil gels containing colloidal silicon dioxide. *J Pharm Sci* 1979; **68**: 842–845.
7 Tukker JJ, De Blaey CJ. The addition of colloidal silicon dioxide to suspension suppositories II. The impact on *in vitro* release and bioavailability. *Acta Pharm Technol* 1984; **30**: 155–160.
8 Realdon N *et al*. Effects of silicium dioxide on drug release from suppositories. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1997; **23**: 1025–1041.
9 Mani N *et al*. Microencapsulation of a hydrophilic drug into a hydrophobic matrix using a salting-out procedure. II. Effects of adsorbents on microsphere properties. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 2004; **30**(1): 83–93.
10 Gallagher SJ *et al*. Effects of membrane type and liquid/liquid phase boundary on *in vitro* release of ketoprofen from gel formulations. *J Drug Target* 2003; **11**(6): 373–379.
11 Schaffazick SR *et al*. Freeze-drying polymeric colloidal suspensions: nanocapsules, nanospheres and nanodispersion. A comparative study. *Eur J Pharm Biopharm* 2003; **56**(3): 501–505.
12 Ettlinger M *et al*. [Adsorption at the surface of fumed silica.] *Arch Pharm* 1987; **320**: 1–15[in German].
13 Callahan JC *et al*. Equilibrium moisture content of pharmaceutical excipients. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1982; **8**: 355–369.
14 Cabot Corporation. Technical literature: *Cab-O-Sil* fumed silicas, the performance additives, 1995.
15 Johansen H, MÏller N. Solvent deposition of drugs on excipients II: interpretation of dissolution, adsorption and absorption characteristics of drugs. *Arch Pharm Chem Sci Ed* 1977; **5**: 33–42.
16 Lewis RJ, ed. *Sax's Dangerous Properties of Industrial Materials*, 11th edn. New York: Wiley, 2004; 3205.
17 Kienholz M. [The behaviour of bacteria in highly pure silicic acid.] *Pharm Ind* 1970; **32**: 677–679[in German].
18 WR Grace & Co. Technical literature: *Syloid 244FP*, 2002.

20 General References

Cabot Corporation. Technical literature PDS171: *Cab-O-Sil M-5P*, 2006.
Evonik Degussa Corp. Technical Bulletin Fine Particles No. 11 TB0011-1: Basic characteristics of *Aerosil* fumed silica, 2006.
Evonik Degussa Corp. Technical literature TI 1281-1: *Aerosil* colloidal silicon dioxide for pharmaceuticals, 2006.
European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines and Healthcare (EDQM). European Pharmacopoeia – State Of Work Of International Harmonisation. *Pharmeuropa* 2009; 21(1): 142–143. http://www.edq-m.eu/site/-614.html (accessed 3 February 2009).
Meyer K, Zimmermann I. Effect of glidants in binary powder mixtures. *Powder Technol* 2004; **139**: 40–54.
Wacker-Chemie GmbH. Technical literature: *Wacker HDK* fumed silica, 1998.
Waddell WW. Silica amorphous.*Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology*, 5th edn, vol. **22**: New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2001; 380–406.
Wagner E, Brunner H. *Aerosil*: its preparation, properties and behaviour in organic liquids. *Angew Chem* 1960; **72**: 744–750.
Yang KY *et al*. Effects of amorphous silicon dioxides on drug dissolution. *J Pharm Sci* 1979; **68**: 560–565.
Zimmermann I *et al*. Nanomaterials as flow regulators in dry powders. *Z Phys Chem* 2004; **218**: 51–102.

21 Author

KP Hapgood.

22 Date of Revision

3 February 2009.

Croscarmellose Sodium

C

1 Nonproprietary Names

BP: Croscarmellose Sodium
JP: Croscarmellose Sodium
PhEur: Croscarmellose Sodium
USP-NF: Croscarmellose Sodium

2 Synonyms

Ac-Di-Sol; carmellosum natricum conexum; crosslinked carboxymethylcellulose sodium; *Explocel*; modified cellulose gum; *Nymcel ZSX*; *Pharmacel XL*; *Primellose*; *Solutab*; *Vivasol*.

3 Chemical Name and CAS Registry Number

Cellulose, carboxymethyl ether, sodium salt, crosslinked [74811-65-7]

4 Empirical Formula and Molecular Weight

Croscarmellose sodium is a crosslinked polymer of carboxymethylcellulose sodium.

See Carboxymethylcellulose sodium.

5 Structural Formula

See Carboxymethylcellulose sodium.

6 Functional Category

Tablet and capsule disintegrant.

7 Applications in Pharmaceutical Formulation or Technology

Croscarmellose sodium is used in oral pharmaceutical formulations as a disintegrant for capsules,[1,2] tablets,[3–13] and granules.

In tablet formulations, croscarmellose sodium may be used in both direct-compression and wet-granulation processes. When used in wet granulations, the croscarmellose sodium should be added in both the wet and dry stages of the process (intra- and extra-granularly) so that the wicking and swelling ability of the disintegrant is best utilized.[11,12] Croscarmellose sodium at concentrations up to 5% w/w may be used as a tablet disintegrant, although normally 2% w/w is used in tablets prepared by direct compression and 3% w/w in tablets prepared by a wet-granulation process. *See* Table I.

Table I: Uses of croscarmellose sodium.

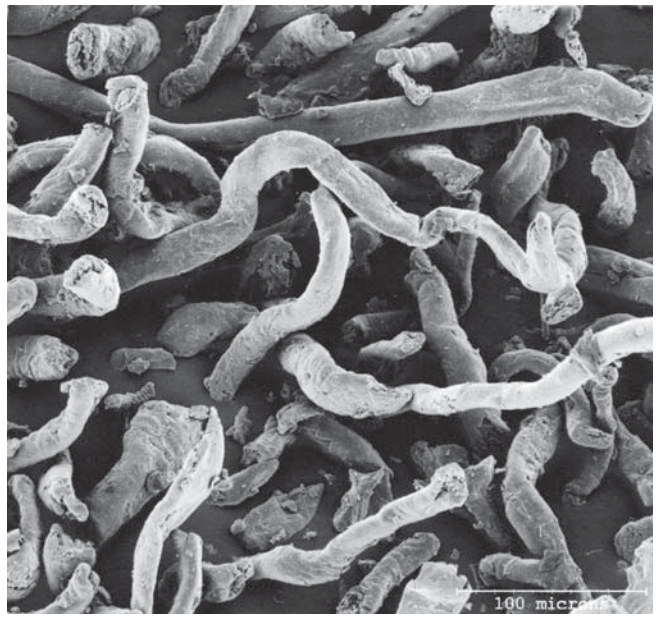
Use	Concentration (%)
Disintegrant in capsules	10–25
Disintegrant in tablets	0.5–5.0

8 Description

Croscarmellose sodium occurs as an odorless, white or grayish-white powder.

SEM 1: Excipient: croscarmellose sodium (*Ac-Di-Sol*); manufacturer: FMC Biopolymer; magnification: 100×.

SEM 2: Excipient: croscarmellose sodium (*Ac-Di-Sol*); manufacturer: FMC Biopolymer; magnification: 1000×.



9 Pharmacopeial Specifications

See Table II. *See also* Section 18.

10 Typical Properties

Acidity/alkalinity pH = 5.0–7.0 in aqueous dispersions.
Bonding index 0.0456
Brittle fracture index 0.1000
Density (bulk) 0.529 g/cm^3 for *Ac-Di-Sol*

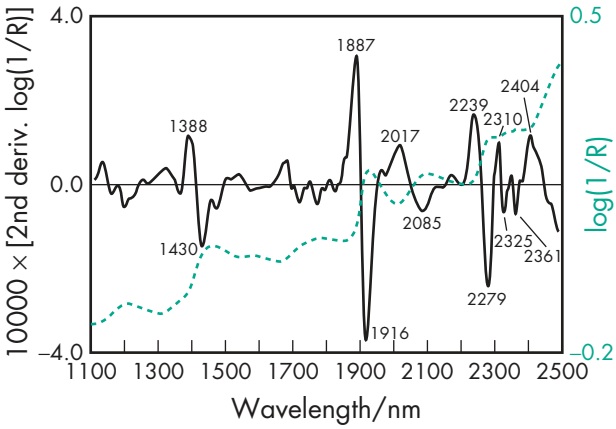


Figure 1: Near-infrared spectrum of croscarmellose sodium measured by reflectance.

Table II: Pharmacopeial specifications for croscarmellose sodium.

Test	JP XV	PhEur 6.5	USP32–NF27
Identification	+	+	+
Characters	+	+	—
pH (1% w/v dispersion)	5.0–7.0	5.0–7.0	5.0–7.0
Loss on drying	⩽10.0%	⩽10.0%	⩽10.0%
Heavy metals	⩽10 ppm	⩽20 ppm	⩽0.001%
Sodium chloride and sodium glycolate	⩽0.5%	⩽0.5%	⩽0.5%
Sulfated ash	—	14.0–28.0%	—
Residue on ignition	14.0–28.0%	—	14.0–28.0%
Degree of substitution	0.60–0.85	0.60–0.85	0.60–0.85
Content of water-soluble material	1.0–10%	⩽10.0%	⩽10.0%
Settling volume	10.0–30.0 mL	10.0–30.0 mL	10.0–30.0 mL
Microbial contamination	—	+	+
Aerobic	—	10^3 cfu/g	10^3 cfu/g
Fungi	—	10^2 cfu/g	10^2 cfu/g

Density (tapped) 0.819 g/cm^3 for *Ac-Di-Sol*
Density (true) 1.543 g/cm^3 for *Ac-Di-Sol*
NIR spectra *see* Figure 1.
Particle size distribution

Ac-Di-Sol: not more than 2% retained on a #200 (73.7 µm) mesh and not more than 10% retained on a #325 (44.5 µm) mesh.

Solubility Insoluble in water, although croscarmellose sodium rapidly swells to 4–8 times its original volume on contact with water. Practically insoluble in acetone, ethanol and toluene.
Specific surface area 0.81–0.83 m^2/g

11 Stability and Storage Conditions

Croscarmellose sodium is a stable though hygroscopic material.

A model tablet formulation prepared by direct compression, with croscarmellose sodium as a disintegrant, showed no significant difference in drug dissolution after storage at 30°C for 14 months.[9]

Croscarmellose sodium should be stored in a well-closed container in a cool, dry place.

12 Incompatibilities

The efficacy of disintegrants, such as croscarmellose sodium, may be slightly reduced in tablet formulations prepared by either the wet-granulation or direct-compression process that contain hygroscopic excipients such as sorbitol.[10]

Croscarmellose sodium is not compatible with strong acids or with soluble salts of iron and some other metals such as aluminum, mercury, and zinc.

13 Method of Manufacture

Alkali cellulose is prepared by steeping cellulose, obtained from wood pulp or cotton fibers, in sodium hydroxide solution. The alkali cellulose is then reacted with sodium monochloroacetate to obtain carboxymethylcellulose sodium. After the substitution reaction is completed and all of the sodium hydroxide has been used, the excess sodium monochloroacetate slowly hydrolyzes to glycolic acid. The glycolic acid changes a few of the sodium carboxymethyl groups to the free acid and catalyzes the formation of crosslinks to produce croscarmellose sodium. The croscarmellose sodium is then extracted with aqueous alcohol and any remaining sodium chloride or sodium glycolate is removed. After purification, croscarmellose sodium of purity greater than 99.5% is obtained.[4] The croscarmellose sodium may be milled to break the polymer fibers into shorter lengths and hence improve its flow properties.

14 Safety

Croscarmellose sodium is mainly used as a disintegrant in oral pharmaceutical formulations and is generally regarded as an essentially nontoxic and nonirritant material. However, oral consumption of large amounts of croscarmellose sodium may have a laxative effect, although the quantities used in solid dosage formulations are unlikely to cause such problems.

In the UK, croscarmellose sodium is accepted for use in dietary supplements.

The WHO has not specified an acceptable daily intake for the related substance carboxymethylcellulose sodium, used as a food additive, since the levels necessary to achieve a desired effect were not considered sufficient to be a hazard to health.[14]

See also Carboxymethylcellulose Sodium.

15 Handling Precautions

Observe normal precautions appropriate to the circumstances and quantity of material handled. Croscarmellose sodium may be irritant to the eyes; eye protection is recommended.

16 Regulatory Status

Included in the FDA Inactive Ingredients Database (oral capsules, granules, sublingual tablets, and tablets). Included in nonparenteral medicines licensed in the UK. Included in the Canadian List of Acceptable Non-medicinal Ingredients.

17 Related Substances

Carboxymethylcellulose calcium; carboxymethylcellulose sodium.

18 Comments

Croscarmellose sodium is one of the materials that have been selected for harmonization by the Pharmacopeial Discussion Group. For further information see the General Information Chapter <1196> in the USP32–NF27, the General Chapter 5.8 in PhEur 6.0, along with the 'State of Work' document on the PhEur EDQM website, and also the General Information Chapter 8 in the JP XV.

Typically, the degree of substitution (DS) for croscarmellose sodium is 0.7.

The EINECs number for croscarmellose sodium is 232-674-9.

19 Specific References

1 Botzolakis JE, Augsburger LL. Disintegrating agents in hard gelatin capsules. Part I: mechanism of action. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1988; **14**(1): 29–41.
2 Dahl TC *et al.* The influence of disintegrant level and capsule size on dissolution of hard gelatin capsules stored in high humidity conditions. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1991; **17**(7): 1001–1016.
3 Gissinger D, Stamm A. A comparative evaluation of the properties of some tablet disintegrants. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1980; **6**(5): 511–536.

4 Shangraw R *et al*. A new era of tablet disintegrants. *Pharm Technol* 1980; **4**(10): 49–57.
5 Zhao N, Augsburger LI. The influence of product brand-to-brand variability on superdisintegrant performance. A case study with croscarmellose sodium. *Pharm Dev Technol* 2006; **11**(2): 179–185.
6 Zhao N, Augsburger LI. The influence of swelling capacity of superdisintegrants in different pH media on the dissolution of hydrochlorthiazide from directly compressed tablets. *AAPS Pharm Sci Tech* 2005; **6**(1): E120–E126.
7 Battu SK *et al*. Formulation and evaluation of rapidly disintegrating fenoverine tablets: effects of superdisintegrants. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 2007; **33**(11): 1225–1232.
8 Gordon MS, Chowhan ZT. Effect of tablet solubility and hygroscopicity on disintegrant efficiency in direct compression tablets in terms of dissolution. *J Pharm Sci* 1987; **76**: 907–909.
9 Gordon MS, Chowhan ZT. The effect of aging on disintegrant efficiency in direct compression tablets with varied solubility and hygroscopicity, in terms of dissolution. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1990; **16**: 437–447.
10 Johnson JR *et al*. Effect of formulation solubility and hygroscopicity on disintegrant efficiency in tablets prepared by wet granulation, in terms of dissolution. *J Pharm Sci* 1991; **80**: 469–471.
11 Gordon MS *et al*. Effect of the mode of super disintegrant incorporation on dissolution in wet granulated tablets. *J Pharm Sci* 1993; **82**(2): 220–226.
12 Khattab I *et al*. Effect of mode of incorporation of disintegrants on the characteristics of fluid-bed wet-granulated tablets. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1993; **45**(8): 687–691.
13 Ferrero C *et al*. Disintegrating efficiency of croscarmellose sodium in a direct compression formulation. *Int J Pharm* 1997; **147**: 11–21.
14 FAO/WHO. Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants. Thirty-fifth report of the joint FAO/WHO expert committee on food additives. *World Health Organ Tech Rep Ser* 1990; No. 789.

20 General References

DMV-Frontera Excipients. Product literature: *Primellose and Primojel*, August 2008.
European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines and Healthcare (EDQM). European Pharmacopoeia – State Of Work Of International Harmonisation. *Pharmeuropa* 2009; 21(1): 142–143. http://www.edqm.eu/site/-614.html (accessed 6 February 2009).
FMC Biopolymer. Material Safety Datasheet: *Ac-Di-Sol*, May 2008.
JRS Pharma. Product literature: *Vivasol*. http://www.jrspharma.de/Pharma/wEnglisch/produktinfo/productinfo_vivasol.shtml (accessed 6 February 2009).

21 Author

RT Guest.

22 Date of Revision

6 February 2009.

Crospovidone

1 Nonproprietary Names

BP: Crospovidone
PhEur: Crospovidone
USP-NF: Crospovidone

2 Synonyms

Crospovidonum; *Crospopharm*; crosslinked povidone; E1202; *Kollidon CL*; *Kollidon CL-M*; *Polyplasdone XL*; *Polyplasdone XL-10*; polyvinylpolypyrrolidone; PVPP; 1-vinyl-2-pyrrolidinone homopolymer.

3 Chemical Name and CAS Registry Number

1-Ethenyl-2-pyrrolidinone homopolymer [9003-39-8]

4 Empirical Formula and Molecular Weight

$(C_6H_9NO)_n$ >1 000 000

The USP32–NF27 describes crospovidone as a water-insoluble synthetic crosslinked homopolymer of *N*-vinyl-2-pyrrolidinone. An exact determination of the molecular weight has not been established because of the insolubility of the material.

5 Structural Formula

See Povidone.

6 Functional Category

Tablet disintegrant.

7 Applications in Pharmaceutical Formulation or Technology

Crospovidone is a water-insoluble tablet disintegrant and dissolution agent used at 2–5% concentration in tablets prepared by direct-compression or wet- and dry-granulation methods.[1–6] It rapidly exhibits high capillary activity and pronounced hydration capacity, with little tendency to form gels. Studies suggest that the particle size of crospovidone strongly influences disintegration of analgesic tablets.[7] Larger particles provide a faster disintegration than smaller particles. Crospovidone can also be used as a solubility enhancer. With the technique of co-evaporation, crospovidone can be used to enhance the solubility of poorly soluble drugs. The drug is adsorbed on to crospovidone in the presence of a suitable solvent and the solvent is then evaporated. This technique results in faster dissolution rate.

8 Description

Crospovidone is a white to creamy-white, finely divided, free-flowing, practically tasteless, odorless or nearly odorless, hygroscopic powder.

9 Pharmacopeial Specifications

See Table I. *See also* Section 18.

10 Typical Properties

Acidity/alkalinity pH = 5.0–8.0 (1% w/v aqueous slurry)
Density 1.22 g/cm^3
Density (bulk) *see* Table II.
Density (tapped) *see* Table II.

Magnesium Stearate

1 Nonproprietary Names

BP: Magnesium Stearate
JP: Magnesium Stearate
PhEur: Magnesium Stearate
USP-NF: Magnesium Stearate

2 Synonyms

Dibasic magnesium stearate; magnesium distearate; magnesii stearas; magnesium octadecanoate; octadecanoic acid, magnesium salt; stearic acid, magnesium salt; *Synpro 90*.

3 Chemical Name and CAS Registry Number

Octadecanoic acid magnesium salt [557-04-0]

4 Empirical Formula and Molecular Weight

$C_{36}H_{70}MgO_4$ 591.24

The USP32–NF27 describes magnesium stearate as a compound of magnesium with a mixture of solid organic acids that consists chiefly of variable proportions of magnesium stearate and magnesium palmitate ($C_{32}H_{62}MgO_4$). The PhEur 6.5 describes magnesium stearate as a mixture of solid organic acids consisting mainly of variable proportions of magnesium stearate and magnesium palmitate obtained from sources of vegetable or animal origin.

M

5 Structural Formula

$[CH_3(CH_2)_{16}COO]_2Mg$

6 Functional Category

Tablet and capsule lubricant.

7 Applications in Pharmaceutical Formulation or Technology

Magnesium stearate is widely used in cosmetics, foods, and pharmaceutical formulations. It is primarily used as a lubricant in capsule and tablet manufacture at concentrations between 0.25% and 5.0% w/w. It is also used in barrier creams. *See also* Section 18.

8 Description

Magnesium stearate is a very fine, light white, precipitated or milled, impalpable powder of low bulk density, having a faint odor of stearic acid and a characteristic taste. The powder is greasy to the touch and readily adheres to the skin.

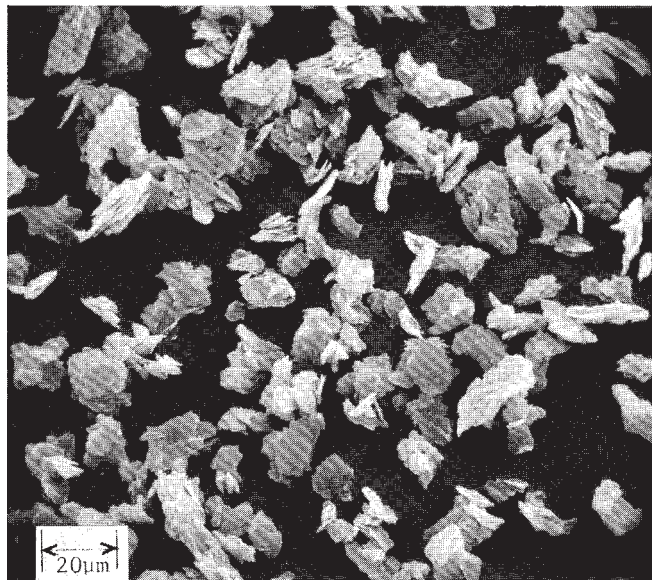
9 Pharmacopeial Specifications

See Table I. *See also* Section 18.

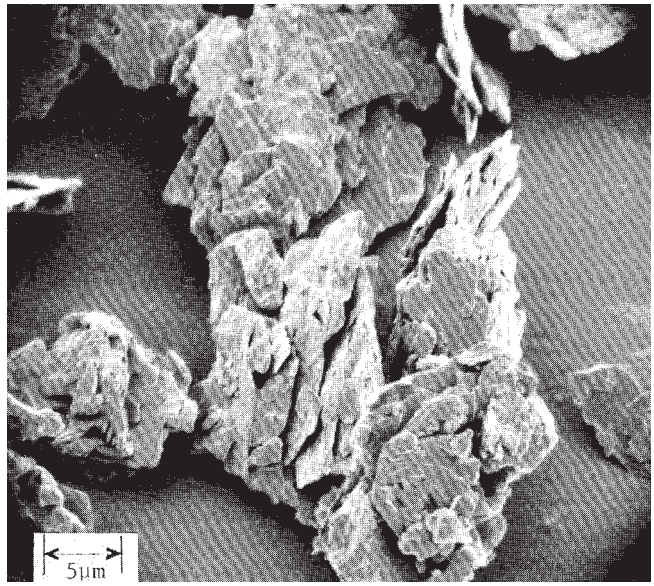
10 Typical Properties

Crystalline forms High-purity magnesium stearate has been isolated as a trihydrate, a dihydrate, and an anhydrate.
Density (bulk) 0.159 g/cm^3
Density (tapped) 0.286 g/cm^3
Density (true) 1.092 g/cm^3
Flash point 250°C
Flowability Poorly flowing, cohesive powder.
Melting range
117–150°C (commercial samples);
126–130°C (high purity magnesium stearate).
NIR spectra *see* Figure 1.
Solubility Practically insoluble in ethanol, ethanol (95%), ether and water; slightly soluble in warm benzene and warm ethanol (95%).
Specific surface area 1.6–14.8 m^2/g

SEM 1: Excipient: magnesium stearate; magnification: 600×.



SEM 2: Excipient: magnesium stearate; magnification: 2400×.



11 Stability and Storage Conditions

Magnesium stearate is stable and should be stored in a well-closed container in a cool, dry place.

Table I: Pharmacopeial specifications for magnesium stearate.

Test	JP XV	PhEur 6.5	USP32–NF27
Identification	+	+	+
Characters	—	+	—
Microbial limits	+	+	+
Aerobic microbes	⩽1000 cfu/g	⩽10^3 cfu/g	⩽1000 cfu/g
Fungi and yeasts	⩽500 cfu/g	⩽10^2 cfu/g	⩽500 cfu/g
Acidity or alkalinity	+	+	+
Acid value of the fatty acid	—	195–210	—
Freezing point	—	⩾53°C	—
Nickel	—	⩽5 ppm	—
Cadmium	—	⩽3 ppm	—
Specific surface area	—	—	+
Loss on drying	⩽6.0%	⩽6.0%	⩽6.0%
Chloride	⩽0.1%	⩽0.1%	⩽0.1%
Sulfate	⩽1.0%	⩽1.0%	⩽1.0%
Lead	—	⩽10 ppm	⩽0.001%
Heavy metals	⩽20 ppm	—	—
Relative stearic/palmitic content	+	+	+
Assay (dried, as Mg)	4.0–5.0%	4.0–5.0%	4.0–5.0%

12 Incompatibilities

Incompatible with strong acids, alkalis, and iron salts. Avoid mixing with strong oxidizing materials. Magnesium stearate cannot be used in products containing aspirin, some vitamins, and most alkaloidal salts.

13 Method of Manufacture

Magnesium stearate is prepared either by the interaction of aqueous solutions of magnesium chloride with sodium stearate or by the interaction of magnesium oxide, hydroxide, or carbonate with stearic acid at elevated temperatures.

14 Safety

Magnesium stearate is widely used as a pharmaceutical excipient and is generally regarded as being nontoxic following oral administration. However, oral consumption of large quantities may produce a laxative effect or mucosal irritation.

No toxicity information is available relating to normal routes of occupational exposure. Limits for heavy metals in magnesium stearate have been evaluated in terms of magnesium stearate worst-case daily intake and heavy metal composition.[1]

Toxicity assessments of magnesium stearate in rats have indicated that it is not irritating to the skin, and is nontoxic when administered orally or inhaled.[2,3]

Magnesium stearate has not been shown to be carcinogenic when implanted into the bladder of mice.[4]

LD_{50} (rat, inhalation): >2 mg/L[2]

LD_{50} (rat, oral): >10 g/kg

15 Handling Precautions

Observe normal precautions appropriate to the circumstances and quantity of material handled. Eye protection and gloves are recommended. Excessive inhalation of magnesium stearate dust may cause upper respiratory tract discomfort, coughing, and choking. Magnesium stearate should be handled in a well-ventilated environment; a respirator is recommended. In the USA, the OSHA limit is 10 mg/m^3 TWA for magnesium stearate.

16 Regulatory Acceptance

GRAS listed. Accepted as a food additive in the USA and UK. Included in the FDA Inactive Ingredients Database (oral capsules, powders, and tablets; buccal and vaginal tablets; topical preparations; intravitreal implants and injections). Included in nonparenteral medicines licensed in the UK. Included in the Canadian List of Acceptable Non-medicinal Ingredients. Listed on the US TSCA inventory.

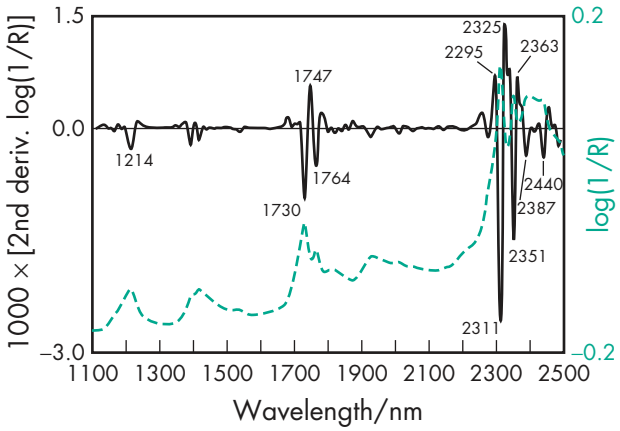


Figure 1: Near-infrared spectrum of magnesium stearate measured by reflectance.

17 Related Substances

Calcium stearate; magnesium aluminum silicate; stearic acid; zinc stearate.

18 Comments

Magnesium stearate is one of the materials that have been selected for harmonization by the Pharmacopeial Discussion Group. For further information see the General Information Chapter <1196> in the USP32–NF27, the General Chapter 5.8 in PhEur 6.0, along with the 'State of Work' document on the PhEur EDQM website, and also the General Information Chapter 8 in the JP XV.

Magnesium stearate is hydrophobic and may retard the dissolution of a drug from a solid dosage form; the lowest possible concentration is therefore used in such formulations.[5–10] Capsule dissolution is also sensitive to both the amount of magnesium stearate in the formulation and the mixing time; higher levels of magnesium stearate and long mixing times can result in the formation of hydrophobic powder beds that do not disperse after the capsule shell dissolves.[11,12]

An increase in the coefficient of variation of mixing and a decrease in the dissolution rate have been observed following blending of magnesium stearate with a tablet granulation. Tablet dissolution rate and crushing strength decreased as the time of blending increased; and magnesium stearate may also increase tablet friability. Blending times with magnesium stearate should therefore be carefully controlled.[13–29] A variety of online analytical techniques have been investigated to monitor magnesium stearate in powder blends and tablets.[30–32] Inverse gas chromatography has been used to examine the surface coverage of magnesium stearate on powder blends.[33] Magnesium stearate also affects the flow properties of blends.[34]

The existence of various crystalline forms of magnesium stearate has been established.[35–39] A trihydrate, a dihydrate, and an anhydrate have been isolated,[5,37,38,40] and an amorphous form has been observed.[41] While the hydrated forms are stable in the presence of moisture, the anhydrous form adsorbs moisture at relative humidity up to 50%, and at higher humidities rehydrates to form the trihydrate. The anhydrate can be formed by drying either of the hydrates at 105°C.[38]

It has not been conclusively established which form of pure magnesium stearate possesses the best lubricating properties.[36,37,41–43] Commercial lots of magnesium stearate generally

consist of mixtures of crystalline forms.[37,39,41,42,44–46] Because of the possibility of conversion of crystalline forms during heating, consideration should be given to the pretreatment conditions employed when determining physical properties of magnesium stearate powders such as surface area.[47,48]

Physical properties of magnesium stearate can vary among batches from different manufacturers[46] because the solid-state characteristics of the powder are influenced by manufacturing variables.[36] Variations in the physical properties of different lots of magnesium stearate from the same vendor have also been observed.[46] Presumably because of these variations, it has not been possible to conclusively correlate the dissolution rate retardation with observed lubricity.[49]

However, various physical properties of different batches of magnesium stearate, such as specific surface area, particle size, crystalline structure, moisture content, and fatty acid composition, have been correlated with lubricant efficacy.[37,41,45,46,50–55] Due to variations in the specific surface area, the labeling states that specific surface area and the method specified for its determination should be listed on the label. Reduction in dissolution caused by the effects of magnesium stearate in some cases can be overcome by including a highly swelling disintegrant in the formulation.[56]

The impact of magnesium stearate levels on tablet compaction properties and performance of roller compacted granulations has been examined.[57–59] In other compaction studies performed with granules, magnesium stearate has been shown to exert an influence on granule relaxation and may help to prevent capping.[60]

There is evidence to suggest that the hydrophobic nature of magnesium stearate can vary from batch to batch owing to the presence of water-soluble, surface-active impurities such as sodium stearate. Batches containing very low concentrations of these impurities have been shown to retard the dissolution of a drug to a greater extent than when using batches that contain higher levels of impurities.[49] One study related lubricity to the fatty acid composition (stearate : palmitate) of lubricant lots for tablet formulations based on compaction data and tablet material properties.[54] However, other studies have indicated that fatty acid composition has no influence on lubricant activity[37] and high-purity magnesium stearate was as effective a lubricant as the commercial material.[10] Moisture sorption at different relative humidities can result in morphological changes in the magnesium stearate.[61,62]

Magnesium stearate has been investigated for use in inhalation powders to control their performance.[63]

A specification for magnesium stearate is included in the Food Chemicals Codex (FCC).[64] The EINECS number for magnesium stearate is 209-150-3.

19 Specific References

1 Chowhan ZT. Harmonization of excipient standards. Weiner ML, Kotkoskie LA, eds. *Excipient Toxicity and Safety*. New York: Marcel Dekker, 2000; 321–354.
2 Anonymous. Final report of the safety assessment of lithium stearate, aluminum distearate, aluminum stearate, aluminum tristearate, ammonium stearate, calcium stearate, magnesium stearate, potassium stearate, sodium stearate, and zinc stearate. *J Am Coll Toxicol* 1982; **1**: 143–177.
3 Sondergaard D *et al*. Magnesium stearate given perorally to rats: a short term study. *Toxicology* 1980; **17**: 51–55.
4 Boyland E *et al*. Further experiments on implantation of materials into the urinary bladder of mice. *Br J Cancer* 1964; **18**: 575–581.
5 Levy G, Gumtow RH. Effect of certain formulation factors on dissolution rate of the active ingredient III: tablet lubricants. *J Pharm Sci* 1963; **52**: 1139–1144.
6 Ganderton D. The effect of distribution of magnesium stearate on the penetration of a tablet by water. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1969; **21**(Suppl.): 9S–18S.
7 Caldwell HC. Dissolution of lithium and magnesium from lithium carbonate capsules containing magnesium stearate. *J Pharm Sci* 1974; **63**: 770–773.
8 Chowhan ZT *et al*. Tablet-to-tablet dissolution variability and its relationship to the homogeneity of a water-soluble drug. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1982; **8**: 145–168.
9 Lerk CF *et al*. Interaction of tablet disintegrants and magnesium stearate during mixing II: effect on dissolution rate. *Pharm Acta Helv* 1982; **57**: 282–286.
10 Hussain MSH *et al*. Effect of commercial and high purity magnesium stearates on in-vitro dissolution of paracetamol DC tablets. *Int J Pharm* 1992; **78**: 203–207.
11 Samyn JC, Jung WY. *In vitro* dissolution from several experimental capsule formulations. *J Pharm Sci* 1970; **59**: 169–175.
12 Murthy KS, Samyn JC. Effect of shear mixing on *in vitro* drug release of capsule formulations containing lubricants. *J Pharm Sci* 1977; **66**: 1215–1219.
13 Ragnarsson G *et al*. The influence of mixing time and colloidal silica on the lubricating properties of magnesium stearate. *Int J Pharm* 1979; **3**: 127–131.
14 Bolhuis GK *et al*. Mixing action and evaluation of tablet lubricants in direct compression. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1980; **6**: 573–589.
15 Bossert J, Stamm A. Effect of mixing on the lubrication of crystalline lactose by magnesium stearate. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1980; **6**: 573–589.
16 Bolhuis GK *et al*. Interaction of tablet disintegrants and magnesium stearate during mixing I: effect on tablet disintegration. *J Pharm Sci* 1981; **70**: 1328–1330.
17 Sheikh-Salem M, Fell JT. The influence of magnesium stearate on time dependent strength changes in tablets. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1981; **7**: 669–674.
18 Stewart PJ. Influence of magnesium stearate on the homogeneity of a prednisone granule ordered mix. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1981; **7**: 485–495.
19 Jarosz PJ, Parrott EL. Effect of tablet lubricants on axial and radial work of failure. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1982; **8**: 445–453.
20 Mitrevej KT, Augsburger LL. Adhesion of tablets in a rotary tablet press II: effects of blending time, running time, and lubricant concentration. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1982; **8**: 237–282.
21 Khan KA *et al*. The effect of mixing time of magnesium stearate on the tableting properties of dried microcrystalline cellulose. *Pharm Acta Helv* 1983; **58**: 109–111.
22 Johansson ME. Investigations of the mixing time dependence of the lubricating properties of granular and powdered magnesium stearate. *Acta Pharm Suec* 1985; **22**: 343–350.
23 Johansson ME. Influence of the granulation technique and starting material properties on the lubricating effect of granular magnesium stearate. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1985; **37**: 681–685.
24 Chowhan ZT, Chi LH. Drug–excipient interactions resulting from powder mixing III: solid state properties and their effect on drug dissolution. *J Pharm Sci* 1986; **75**: 534–541.
25 Chowhan ZT, Chi LH. Drug–excipient interactions resulting from powder mixing IV: role of lubricants and their effect on *in vitro* dissolution. *J Pharm Sci* 1986; **75**: 542–545.
26 Johansson ME, Nicklasson M. Influence of mixing time, particle size and colloidal silica on the surface coverage and lubrication of magnesium stearate. Rubinstein MH, ed. *Pharmaceutical Technology: Tableting Technology*. Chichester: Ellis Horwood, 1987; 43–50.
27 Wang LH, Chowhan ZT. Drug–excipient interactions resulting from powder mixing V: role of sodium lauryl sulfate. *Int J Pharm* 1990; **60**: 61–78.
28 Muzikova J, Horacek J. The dry binders, *Vivapur 102*, *Vivapur 12* and the effect of magnesium stearate on the strength of tablets containing these substances. *Ceske Slov Farm* 2003; **52**(4): 176–180.
29 Muzikova J. Effect of magnesium stearate on the tensile strength of tablets made with the binder *Prosolv SMCC 90*. *Ceska Slow Farm* 2002; **51**(1): 41–43.
30 Aguirre-Mendez C, Romanach RJ. A Raman spectroscopic method to monitor magnesium stearate in blends and tablets. *Pharmaceut Tech Eur* 2007; **19**(9): 53–61.
31 St-Onge L *et al*. Rapid quantitative analysis of magnesium stearate in tablets using laser-induced breakdown spectroscopy. *J Pharm Pharmaceut Sci* 2005; **8**(2): 272–288.
32 Duong N-H *et al*. A homogeneity study using NIR spectroscopy: tracking magnesium stearate in Bohle bin-blender. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 2003; **29**(6): 679–687.
33 Swaminathan V *et al*. Measurement of the surface energy of lubricated pharmaceutical powders by inverse gas chromatography. *Int. J. Pharm* 2006; **312**(1–2): 158–165.

34 Faqih AM *et al*. Effect of moisture and magnesium stearate concentration on flow properties of cohesive granular materials. *Int J Pharm* 2007; **336**(2): 338–345.
35 Muller BW. The pseudo-polymorphism of magnesium stearate. *Zbl Pharm* 1977; **116**(12): 1261–1266.
36 Miller TA, York P. Physical and chemical characteristics of some high purity magnesium stearate and palmitate powders. *Int J Pharm* 1985; **23**: 55–67.
37 Ertel KD, Carstensen JT. Chemical, physical, and lubricant properties of magnesium stearate. *J Pharm Sci* 1988; **77**: 625–629.
38 Ertel KD, Carstensen JT. An examination of the physical properties of pure magnesium stearate. *Int J Pharm* 1988; **42**: 171–180.
39 Wada Y, Matsubara T. Pseudo-polymorphism and crystalline transition of magnesium stearate. *Thermochim Acta* 1992; **196**: 63–84.
40 Sharpe SA *et al*. Physical characterization of the polymorphic variations of magensium stearate and magnesium palmitate hydrate species. *Struct Chem* 1997; **8**(1): 73–84.
41 Leinonen UI *et al*. Physical and lubrication properties of magnesium stearate. *J Pharm Sci* 1992; **81**(12): 1194–1198.
42 Muller BW. Polymorphism of magnesium stearate and the influence of the crystal structure on the lubricating behavior of excipients. *Acta Pharm Suec* 1981; **18**: 74–75.
43 Okoye P, Wu S.H. Lubrication of direct-compressible blends with magnesium stearate monohydrate and dihydrate. *Pharm Technol* 2007; **31**(9): 116–129.
44 Brittain HG. Raw materials. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1989; **15**(13): 2083–2103.
45 Dansereau R, Peck GE. The effect of the variability in the physical and chemical properties of magnesium stearate on the properties of compressed tablets. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1987; **13**: 975–999.
46 Barra J, Somma R. Influence of the physicochemical variability of magnesium stearate on its lubricant properties: possible solutions. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1996; **22**(11): 1105–1120.
47 Phadke DS, Collier JL. Effect of degassing temperature on the specific surface area and other physical properties of magnesium stearate. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1994; **20**(5): 853–858.
48 Koivisto M *et al*. Effect of temperature and humidity on vegetable grade magnesium stearate. *Powder Technol* 2004; **147**(1–3): 79–85.
49 Billany MR, Richards JH. Batch variation of magnesium stearate and its effect on the dissolution rate of salicylic acid from solid dosage forms. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1982; **8**: 497–511.
50 Frattini C, Simioni L. Should magnesium stearate be assessed in the formulation of solid dosage forms by weight or by surface area? *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1984; **10**: 1117–1130.
51 Bos CE *et al*. Lubricant sensitivity in relation to bulk density for granulations based on starch or cellulose. *Int J Pharm* 1991; **67**: 39–49.
52 Phadke DS, Eichorst JL. Evaluation of particle size distribution and specific surface area of magnesium stearate. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1991; **17**: 901–906.
53 Steffens KJ, Koglin J. The magnesium stearate problem. *Manuf Chem* 1993; **64**(12): 16–19.
54 Marwaha SB, Rubinstein MH. Structure-lubricity evaluation of magnesium stearate. *Int J Pharm* 1988; **43**(3): 249–255.
55 Rao KP *et al*. Impact of solid-state properties on lubrication efficacy of magnesium stearate. *Pharm Dev Technol* 2005; **10**(3): 423–437.
56 Desai DS *et al*. Physical interactions of magnesium stearate with starch-derived disintegrants and their effects on capsule and tablet dissolution. *Int J Pharm* 1993; **91**(2–3): 217–226.
57 Wurster DE *et al*. The influence of magnesium stearate on the hiestand tableting indices and other related mechanical properties of maltodextrins. *Pharm Dev Technol* 2005; **10**(4): 461–466.
58 Likitlersuang S *et al*. The effect of binary mixture composition and magnesium stearate concentration on the hiestand tableting indices and other related mechanical properties. *Pharm Dev Technol* 2007; **12**(5): 533–541.
59 He X *et al*. Mechanistic study of the effect of roller compaction and lubricant on tablet mechanical strength. *J Pharm Sci* 2007; **96**(5): 1342–1355.
60 Ebba F *et al*. Stress relaxation studies of granules as a function of different lubricants. *Eur J Pharm Biopharm* 2001; **52**(2): 211–220.
61 Swaminathan V, Kildisig DO. An examination of the moisture sorption characteristics of commercial magnesium stearate. *AAPS Pharm Sci Tech* 2001; **2**(4): 28.
62 Bracconi P *et al*. Structural properties of magnesium stearate pseudopolymorphs: effect of temperature. *Int J Pharm* 2003; **262**(1–2): 109–124.
63 Guchardi R *et al*. Influence of fine lactose and magnesium stearate on low dose dry powder inhaler formulations. *Int J Pharm* 2008; **348**(1–2): 10–17.
64 *Food Chemicals Codex*, 6th edn. Bethesda, MD: United States Pharmacopeia, 2008; 568.

20 General References

Bohidar NR *et al*. Selecting key pharmaceutical formulation factors by regression anaysis. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1979; **5**: 175–216.

Butcher AE, Jones TM. Some physical characteristics of magnesium stearate. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1972; **24**: 1P–9P.

European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines and Healthcare (EDQM). European Pharmacopoeia – State Of Work Of International Harmonisation. *Pharmeuropa* 2009; 21(1): 142–143. http://www.edqm.eu/site/-614.html (accessed 3 February 2009).

Ford JL, Rubinstein MH. An investigation into some pharmaceutical interactions by differential scanning calorimetry. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1981; **7**: 675–682.

Johansson ME. Granular magnesium stearate as a lubricant in tablet formulations. *Int J Pharm* 1984; **21**: 307–315.

Jones TM. The effect of glidant addition on the flowability of bulk particulate solids. *J Soc Cosmet Chem* 1970; **21**: 483–500.

Pilpel N. Metal stearates in pharmaceuticals and cosmetics. *Manuf Chem Aerosol News* 1971; **42**(10): 37–40.

York P. Tablet lubricants. Florence AT, ed. *Materials Used in Pharmaceutical Formulation*. London: Society of Chemical Industry, 1984; 37–70.

Zanowiak P. Lubrication in solid dosage form design and manufacture. Swarbick J, Boylan JC, eds. *Encyclopedia of Pharmaceutical Technology.*, vol. **9**: New York: Marcel Dekker, 1990; 87–112.

21 Authors

LV Allen Jr, PE Luner.

22 Date of Revision

3 February 2009.

M

The therapeutic use of sodium propionate in topical antifungal preparations has largely been superseded by a new generation of antifungal drugs.

A specification for sodium propionate is contained in the Food Chemicals Codex (FCC).[6]

The EINECS number for sodium propionate is 205-290-4. The PubChem Compound ID (CID) for sodium propionate is 23663426.

19 Specific References

1 Bishop Y, ed. *The Veterinary Formulary*, 6th edn. London: Pharmaceutical Press, 2005; 419–420.
2 Heseltine WW. A note on sodium propionate. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1952; **4**: 120–122.
3 Graham WD *et al*. Chronic toxicity of bread additives to rats. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1954; **6**: 534–545.
4 Lewis RJ, ed. *Sax's Dangerous Properties of Industrial Materials*, 11th edn. New York: Wiley, 2004; 3276.
5 Health and Safety Executive. *EH40/2005: Workplace Exposure Limits*. Sudbury: HSE Books, 2005 (updated 2007). http://www.hse.gov.uk/coshh/table1.pdf (accessed 5 February 2009).
6 *Food Chemicals Codex*, 6th edn. Bethesda, MD: United States Pharmacopeia, 2008; 906.

20 General References

Doores S. Organic acids. Branen AL, Davidson PM, eds. *Antimicrobials in Foods*. New York: Marcel Dekker, 1983; 85–87.
Furia TE, ed. *CRC Handbook of Food Additives*. Cleveland, OH: CRC Press, 1972; 137–141.

21 Author

T Sakurai.

22 Date of Revision

5 February 2009.

Sodium Starch Glycolate

1 Nonproprietary Names

BP: Sodium Starch Glycolate
PhEur: Sodium Starch Glycolate
USP-NF: Sodium Starch Glycolate

2 Synonyms

Carboxymethyl starch, sodium salt; carboxymethylamylum natricum; *Explosol*; *Explotab*; *Glycolys*; *Primojel*; starch carboxymethyl ether, sodium salt; *Tablo*; *Vivastar P*.

3 Chemical Name and CAS Registry Number

Sodium carboxymethyl starch [9063-38-1]

4 Empirical Formula and Molecular Weight

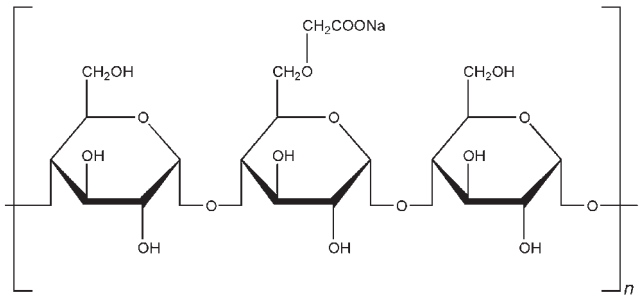
The USP32–NF27 describes two types of sodium starch glycolate, Type A and Type B, and states that sodium starch glycolate is the sodium salt of a carboxymethyl ether of starch or of a crosslinked carboxymethyl ether of starch.

The PhEur 6.0 describes three types of material: Type A and Type B are described as the sodium salt of a crosslinked partly *O*-carboxymethylated potato starch. Type C is described as the sodium salt of a partly *O*-carboxymethylated starch, crosslinked by physical dehydration. Types A, B, and C are differentiated by their pH, sodium, and sodium chloride content.

The PhEur and USP–NF monographs have been harmonized for Type A and Type B variants.

Sodium starch glycolate may be characterized by the degree of substitution and crosslinking. The molecular weight is typically 5×10^5–1×10^6.

5 Structural Formula



6 Functional Category

Tablet and capsule disintegrant.

7 Applications in Pharmaceutical Formulation or Technology

Sodium starch glycolate is widely used in oral pharmaceuticals as a disintegrant in capsule[1–6] and tablet formulations.[7–10] It is commonly used in tablets prepared by either direct-compression[11–13] or wet-granulation processes.[14–16] The usual concentration employed in a formulation is between 2% and 8%, with the optimum concentration about 4%, although in many cases 2% is sufficient. Disintegration occurs by rapid uptake of water followed by rapid and enormous swelling.[17–20]

Although the effectiveness of many disintegrants is affected by the presence of hydrophobic excipients such as lubricants, the disintegrant efficiency of sodium starch glycolate is unimpaired. Increasing the tablet compression pressure also appears to have no effect on disintegration time.[10–12]

Sodium starch glycolate has also been investigated for use as a suspending vehicle.[21]

8 Description

Sodium starch glycolate is a white or almost white free-flowing very hygroscopic powder. The PhEur 6.0 states that when examined under a microscope it is seen to consist of: granules, irregularly shaped, ovoid or pear-shaped, 30–100 µm in size, or rounded, 10–35 µm in size; compound granules consisting of 2–4 components occur occasionally; the granules have an eccentric hilum and clearly visible concentric striations. Between crossed nicol prisms, the granules show a distinct black cross intersecting at the hilum; small crystals are visible at the surface of the granules. The granules show considerable swelling in contact with water.

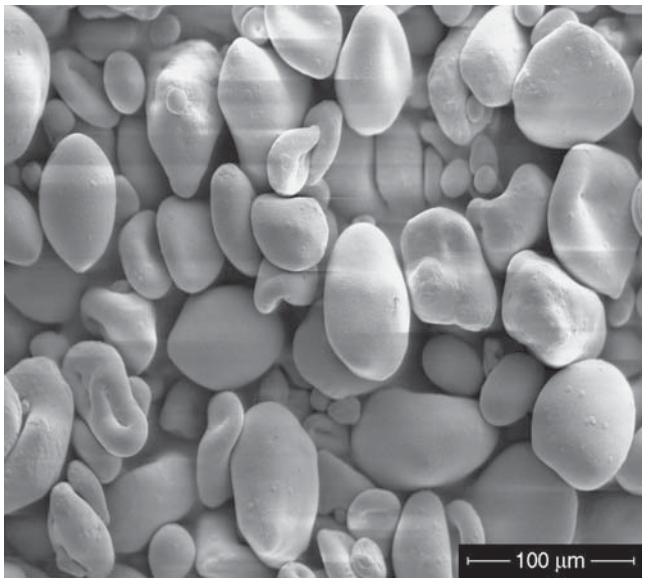
9 Pharmacopeial Specifications

See Table I. *See also* Section 18.

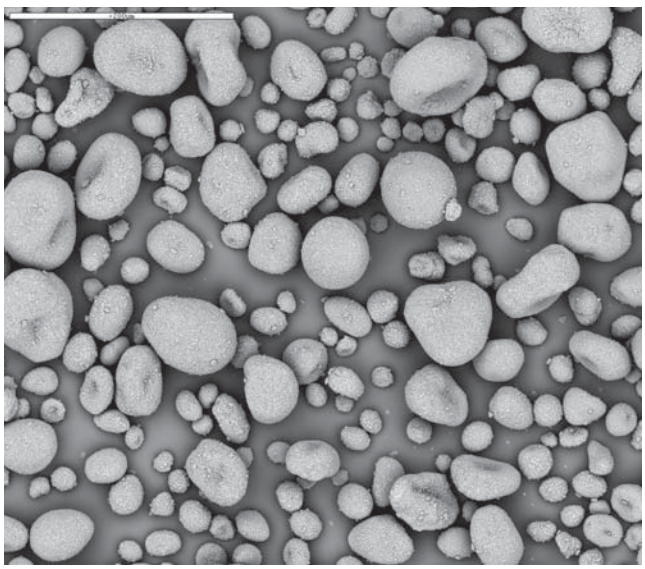
10 Typical Properties

Acidity/alkalinity *See* Section 9.
Density (bulk)
0.756 g/cm^3 for *Glycolys*;
0.81 g/cm^3 for *Primojel*;
0.67 g/cm^3 for *Tablo*.
Density (tapped)
0.945 g/cm^3 for *Glycolys*;
0.98 g/cm^3 for *Primojel*;
0.83 g/cm^3 for *Tablo*.
Density (true)
1.56 g/cm^3 for *Primojel*;
1.49 g/cm^3 for *Tablo*.
Melting point Does not melt, but chars at approximately 200°C.
NIR spectra *see* Figure 1.
Particle size distribution 100% of particles less than 106 µm in size. Average particle size (d_{50}) is 38 µm and 42 µm for *Primojel* by microscopy and sieving, respectively.
Solubility Practically insoluble in methylene chloride. It gives a translucent suspension in water.
Specific surface area
0.24 m^2/g for *Glycolys*;
0.185 m^2/g for *Primojel*;
0.335 m^2/g for *Tablo*.

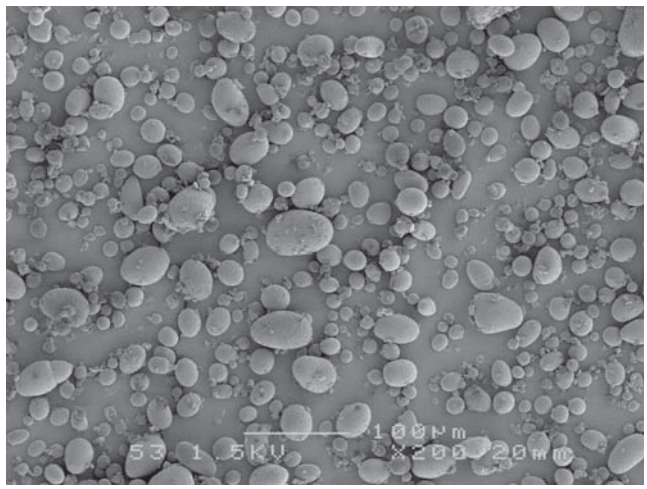
SEM 1: Excipient: sodium starch glycolate (*Explotab*); manufacturer: JRS Pharma; magnification: 300×; voltage: 5 kV.



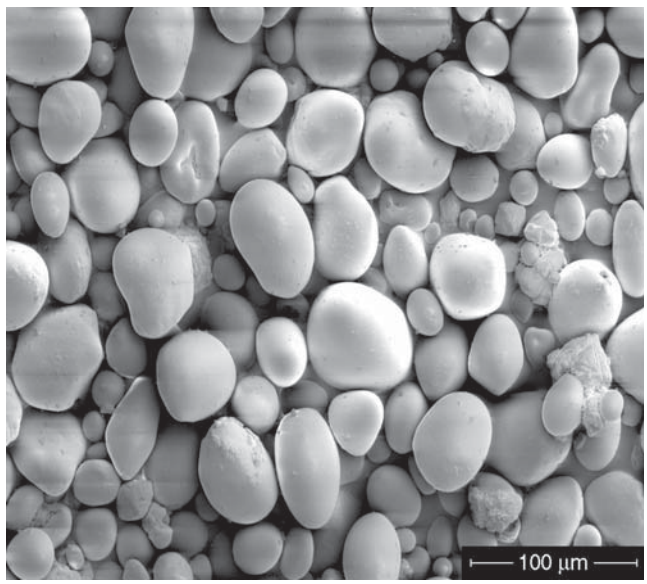
SEM 2: Excipient: sodium starch glycolate (*Glycolys*); manufacturer: Roquettes Frères.



SEM 3: Excipient: sodium starch glycolate (*Primojel*); manufacturer: DMV-Fonterra Excipients; magnification: 200×; voltage: 1.5 kV.



SEM 4: Excipient: sodium starch glycolate (*Vivastar P*); manufacturer: JRS Pharma; magnification: 300×; voltage: 5 kV.



S

Table I: Pharmacopeial specifications for sodium starch glycolate.

Test	PhEur 6.0	USP32–NF27
Identification	+	+
Characters	+	—
Appearance of solution	+	—
pH	+	+
Type A	5.5–7.5	5.5–7.5
Type B	3.0–5.0	3.0–5.0
Type C	5.5–7.5	—
Heavy metals	⩽20 ppm	⩽0.002%
Iron	⩽20 ppm	⩽0.002%
Loss on drying	+	⩽10%
Type A	⩽10.0%	—
Type B	⩽10.0%	—
Type C	⩽7.0%	—
Microbial limits	+[a]	+[a]
Sodium chloride	+	⩽7.0%
Type A	⩽7.0%	—
Type B	⩽7.0%	—
Type C	⩽1.0%	—
Sodium glycolate	+	⩽2.0%
Type A	⩽2.0%	—
Type B	⩽2.0%	—
Type C	⩽2.0%	—
Assay (of Na)	+	+
Type A	2.8–4.2%	2.8–4.2%
Type B	2.0–3.4%	2.0–3.4%
Type C	2.8–5.0%	—

(a) Complies with tests for *Salmonella* and *Escherichia coli*.

Swelling capacity In water, sodium starch glycolate swells to up to 300 times its volume.

Viscosity (dynamic) ⩽200 mPa s (200 cP) for a 4% w/v aqueous dispersion; viscosity is 4.26 mPa s for a 2% w/v aqueous dispersion (depending on source and grade).

11 Stability and Storage Conditions

Tablets prepared with sodium starch glycolate have good storage properties.[22–24] Sodium starch glycolate is stable although very hygroscopic, and should be stored in a well-closed container in order to protect it from wide variations of humidity and temperature, which may cause caking.

The physical properties of sodium starch glycolate remain unchanged for up to 3 years if it is stored at moderate temperatures and humidity.

12 Incompatibilities

Sodium starch glycolate is incompatible with ascorbic acid.[25]

13 Method of Manufacture

Sodium starch glycolate is a substituted derivative of potato starch. Typically, commercial products are also crosslinked using either sodium trimetaphosphate (Types A and B) or dehydration (Type C).[26]

Starch is carboxymethylated by reacting it with sodium chloroacetate in an alkaline, nonaqueous medium, typically denatured ethanol or methanol, followed by neutralization with citric acid, acetic acid, or some other acid. *Vivastar P* is manufactured in methanolic medium, and *Explotab* in ethanolic medium.

14 Safety

Sodium starch glycolate is widely used in oral pharmaceutical formulations and is generally regarded as a nontoxic and nonirritant material. However, oral ingestion of large quantities may be harmful.

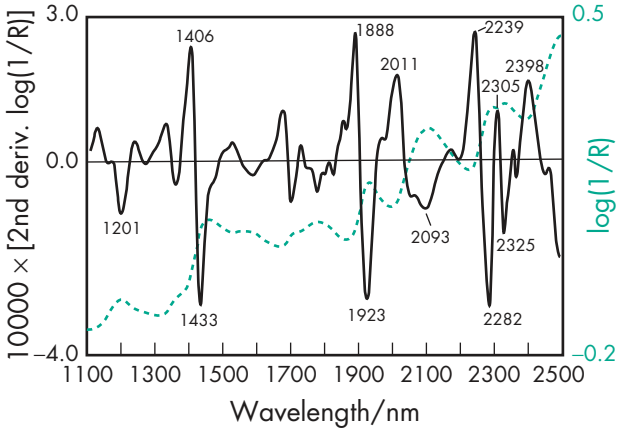


Figure 1: Near-infrared spectrum of sodium starch glycolate measured by reflectance.

15 Handling Precautions

Observe normal precautions appropriate to the circumstances and quantity of material handled. Sodium starch glycolate may be irritant to the eyes; eye protection and gloves are recommended. A dust mask or respirator is recommended for processes that generate a large quantity of dust.

16 Regulatory Acceptance

Included in the FDA Inactive Ingredients Database (oral capsules and tablets). Included in nonparenteral medicines licensed in the UK. Included in the Canadian List of Acceptable Non-medicinal Ingredients.

17 Related Substances

Pregelatinized starch; starch.

18 Comments

Sodium starch glycolate is one of the materials that have been selected for harmonization by the Pharmacopeial Discussion Group. For further information see the General Information Chapter <1196> in the USP32–NF27, the General Chapter 5.8 in PhEur 6.0, along with the 'State of Work' document on the PhEur EDQM website, and also the General Information Chapter 8 in the JP XV.

The physical properties of sodium starch glycolate, and hence its effectiveness as a disintegrant, are affected by the degree of crosslinkage, extent of carboxymethylation, and purity.[27,28]

Sodium starch glycolate has been reported to interact with glycopeptide antibiotics,[29,30] basic drugs, and increase the photostability of norfloxacin.[31] The solubility of the formulation matrix and mode of incorporation in wet granulation can affect the disintegration time; disintegration times can be slower in tablets containing high levels of soluble excipients.[32]

Commercially, sodium starch glycolate is available in a number of speciality grades, e.g. low pH (*Explotab Low pH*, *Glycolys Low pH*); low viscosity (*Explotab CLV*, *Glycolys LV*); low solvent (*Vivastar PSF*); and low moisture *Glycolys LM*.

A specification for sodium starch glycolate is included in the *Japanese Pharmaceutical Excipients* (JPE).[33]

19 Specific References

1 Newton JM, Razzo FN. Interaction of formulation factors and dissolution fluid and the *in vitro* release of drug from hard gelatin capsules. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1975; **27**: 78P.

S

2 Stewart AG *et al*. The release of a model low-dose drug (riboflavine) from hard gelatin capsule formulations. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1979; **31**: 1–6.
3 Chowhan ZT, Chi L-H. Drug–excipient interactions resulting from powder mixing III: solid state properties and their effect on drug dissolution. *J Pharm Sci* 1986; **75**: 534–541.
4 Botzolakis JE, Augsburger LL. Disintegrating agents in hard gelatin capsules part 1: mechanism of action. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1988; **14**(1): 29–41.
5 Hannula A-M *et al*. Release of ibuprofen from hard gelatin capsule formulations: effect of modern disintegrants. *Acta Pharm Fenn* 1989; **98**: 189–196.
6 Marvola M *et al*. Effect of sodium bicarbonate and sodium starch glycolate on the *in vivo* disintegration of hard gelatin capsules – a radiological study in the dog. *Acta Pharm Nord* 1989; **1**: 355–362.
7 Khan KA, Rooke DJ. Effect of disintegrant type upon the relationship between compressional pressure and dissolution efficiency. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1976; **28**: 633–636.
8 Rubinstein MH, Price EJ. *In vivo* evaluation of the effect of five disintegrants on the bioavailability of frusemide from 40 mg tablets. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1977; **29**: 5P.
9 Caramella C *et al*. The influence of disintegrants on the characteristics of coated acetylsalicylic acid tablets. *Farmaco (Prat)* 1978; **33**: 498–507.
10 Gebre Mariam T *et al*. Evaluation of the disintegration efficiency of a sodium starch glycolate prepared from enset starch in compressed tablets. *Eur J Pharm Biopharm* 1996; **42**(2): 124–132.
11 Cid E, Jaminet F. [Influence of adjuvants on the dissolution rate and stability of acetylsalicylic acid in compressed tablets.] *J Pharm Belg* 1971; **26**: 38–48[in French].
12 Gordon MS, Chowhan ZT. Effect of tablet solubility and hygroscopicity on disintegrant efficiency in direct compression tablets in terms of dissolution. *J Pharm Sci* 1987; **76**: 907–909.
13 Cordoba-Diaz M *et al*. Influence of pharmacotechnical design on the interaction and availability of norfloxacin in directly compressed tablets with certain antacids. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 2000; **26**: 159–166.
14 Sekulović D *et al*. The investigation of the influence of Explotab on the disintegration of tablets. *Pharmazie* 1986; **41**: 153–154.
15 Bolhius GK *et al*. Improvement of dissolution of poorly soluble drugs by solid deposition on a super disintegrant. Part 2. Choice of super disintegrants and effect of granulation. *Eur J Pharm Sci* 1997; **5**(2): 63–69.
16 Gordon MS *et al*. Effect of the mode of super disintegrant incorporation on dissolution in wet granulated tablets. *J Pharm Sci* 1993; **82**: 220–226.
17 Khan KA, Rhodes CT. Disintegration properties of calcium phosphate dibasic dihydrate tablets. *J Pharm Sci* 1975; **64**: 166–168.
18 Khan KA, Rhodes CT. Water-sorption properties of tablet disintegrants. *J Pharm Sci* 1975; **64**: 447–451.
19 Wan LSC, Prasad KPP. Uptake of water by excipients in tablets. *Int J Pharm* 1989; **50**: 147–153.
20 Thibert R, Hancock BC. Direct visualization of superdisintegrant hydration using environmental scanning electron microscopy. *J Pharm Sci* 1996; **85**: 1255–1258.
21 Danckwerts MP *et al*. Pharmaceutical formulation of a fixed-dose anti-tuberculosis combination. *Int J Tuberc Lung D* 2003; **7**: 289–297.
22 Horhota ST *et al*. Effect of storage at specified temperature and humidity on properties of three directly compressible tablet formulations. *J Pharm Sci* 1976; **65**: 1746–1749.
23 Sheen P-C, Kim S-I. Comparative study of disintegrating agents in tiaramide hydrochloride tablets. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1989; **15**(3): 401–414.
24 Gordon MS, Chowhan ZT. The effect of aging on disintegrant efficiency in direct compression tablets with varied solubility and hygroscopicity, in terms of dissolution. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1990; **16**(3): 437–447.
25 Botha SA *et al*. DSC screening for drug–excipient and excipient–excipient interactions in polypharmaceuticals intended for the alleviation of the symptoms of colds and flu. III. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1987; **13**(7): 1197–1215.
26 Bolhuis GK *et al*. On the similarity of sodium starch glycolate from different sources. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1986; **12**(4): 621–630.
27 Rudnic EM *et al*. Effect of molecular structure variation on the disintegrant action of sodium starch glycolate. *J Pharm Sci* 1985; **74**: 647–650.
28 Bolhuis GK *et al*. Effect of variation of degree of substitution, crosslinking and purity on the disintegrant efficiency of sodium starch glycolate. *Acta Pharm Technol* 1984; **30**: 24–32.
29 Claudius JS, Neau SH. Kinetic and equilibrium characterization of interactions between glycopeptide antibiotics and sodium carboxymethyl starch. *Int J Pharm* 1996; **144**: 71–79.
30 Claudius JS, Neau SH. The solution stability of vancomycin in the presence and absence of sodium carboxymethyl starch. *Int J Pharm* 1998; **168**: 41–48.
31 Cordoba-Borrego M *et al*. Validation of a high performance liquid chromatographic method for the determination of norfloxacin and its application to stability studies (photostability study of norfloxacin). *J Pharm Biomed Anal* 1999; **18**: 919–926.
32 Gordon MS *et al*. Effect of the mode of super disintegrant incorporation on dissolution in wet granulated tablets. *J Pharm Sci* 1993; **82**: 220–226.
33 Japanese Pharmaceutical Excipients Council. *Japanese Pharmaceutical Excipients 2004*. Tokyo: Yakuji Nippo, 2004; 774.

20 General References

Augsburger LL *et al*. Superdisintegrants: characterisation and function. Swarbrick J, ed. *Encyclopedia of Pharmaceutical Technology*, 3rd edn. London: Informa Healthcare, 2007; 2553–2567.
Blanver. Technical literature: *Tablo*, *Explosol*, 2008.
DMV-Fonterra Excipients. Technical literature: *Primojel*, 2008.
European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines and Healthcare (EDQM). European Pharmacopoeia – State Of Work Of International Harmonisation. *Pharmeuropa* 2009; 21(1): 142–143. http://www.edqm.eu/site/-614.html (accessed 3 February 2009).
Edge S *et al*. Chemical characterisation of sodium starch glycolate particles. *Int J Pharm* 2002; **240**: 67–78.
Edge S *et al*. Powder compaction properties of sodium starch glycolate disintegrants. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 2002; **28**(8): 989–999.
JRS Pharma. Technical literature: *Explotab, Vivastar P*, 2004.
Khan KA, Rhodes CT. Further studies of the effect of compaction pressure on the dissolution efficiency of direct compression systems. *Pharm Acta Helv* 1974; **49**: 258–261.
Mantovani F *et al*. A combination of vapor sorption and dynamic laser light scattering methods for the determination of the Flory parameter chi and the crosslink density of a powdered polymeric gel. *Fluid Phase Equilib* 2000; **167**(1): 63–81.
Mendell E. An evaluation of carboxymethyl starch as a tablet disintegrant. *Pharm Acta Helv* 1974; **49**: 248–250.
Roquette Frères. Technical literature: *Glycolys*, 2008.
Shah U, Augsburger L. Multiple sources of sodium starch glycolate NF: evaluation of functional equivalence and development of standard performance tests. *Pharm Dev Tech* 2002; **7**(3): 345–359.
Young PM *et al*. Interaction of moisture with sodium starch glycolate. *Pharm Dev Tech* 2007; **12**: 211–216.
Young PM *et al*. The effect of moisture on the compressibility and compactability of sodium starch glycolates. *Pharm Dev Tech* 2007; **12**: 217–222.

21 Author

PM Young.

22 Date of Revision

3 February 2009.

S

Stearic Acid

1 Nonproprietary Names

BP: Stearic Acid
JP: Stearic Acid
PhEur: Stearic Acid
USP-NF: Stearic Acid

2 Synonyms

Acidum stearicum; cetylacetic acid; *Crodacid*; *Cristal G*; *Cristal S*; *Dervacid*; E570; *Edenor*; *Emersol*; *Extra AS*; *Extra P*; *Extra S*; *Extra ST*; 1-heptadecanecarboxylic acid; *Hystrene*; *Industrene*; *Kortacid 1895*; *Pearl Steric*; *Pristerene*; stereophanic acid; *Tegostearic*.

3 Chemical Name and CAS Registry Number

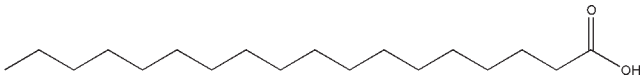
Octadecanoic acid [57-11-4]

4 Empirical Formula and Molecular Weight

$C_{18}H_{36}O_2$ 284.47 (for pure material)

The USP32–NF27 describes stearic acid as a mixture of stearic acid ($C_{18}H_{36}O_2$) and palmitic acid ($C_{16}H_{32}O_2$). In the USP32–NF27, the content of stearic acid is not less than 40.0% and the sum of the two acids is not less than 90.0%. The USP32–NF27 also contains a monograph for purified stearic acid; *see* Section 17. The PhEur 6.5 contains a single monograph for stearic acid but defines stearic acid 50, stearic acid 70, and stearic acid 95 as containing specific amounts of stearic acid ($C_{18}H_{36}O_2$); *see* Section 9.

5 Structural Formula



6 Functional Category

Emulsifying agent; solubilizing agent; tablet and capsule lubricant.

7 Applications in Pharmaceutical Formulation or Technology

Stearic acid is widely used in oral and topical pharmaceutical formulations. It is mainly used in oral formulations as a tablet and capsule lubricant;[1–3] *see* Table I, although it may also be used as a binder[4] or in combination with shellac as a tablet coating. It has also been suggested that stearic acid may be used in enteric tablet coatings and as a sustained-release drug carrier.[5]

In topical formulations, stearic acid is used as an emulsifying and solubilizing agent. When partially neutralized with alkalis or triethanolamine, stearic acid is used in the preparation of creams.[6,7] The partially neutralized stearic acid forms a creamy base when mixed with 5–15 times its own weight of aqueous liquid, the appearance and plasticity of the cream being determined by the proportion of alkali used.

Stearic acid is used as the hardening agent in glycerin suppositories.

Stearic acid is also widely used in cosmetics and food products.

Table I: Uses of stearic acid.

Use	Concentration (%)
Ointments and creams	1–20
Tablet lubricant	1–3

8 Description

Stearic acid is a hard, white or faintly yellow-colored, somewhat glossy, crystalline solid or a white or yellowish white powder. It has a slight odor (with an odor threshold of 20 ppm) and taste suggesting tallow.

See also Section 13.

9 Pharmacopeial Specifications

See Table II. *See also* Section 18.

10 Typical Properties

Acid value 195–212
Boiling point 383°C
Density (bulk) ≈0.537 g/cm^3
Density (tapped) 0.571 g/cm^3
Density (true) 0.980 g/cm^3
Flash point 113°C (closed cup)
Melting point 69–70°C
Moisture content Contains practically no water.
NIR spectra *see* Figure 1.
Partition coefficient Log (oil : water) = 8.2
Refractive index 1.43 at 80°C
Saponification value 200–220
Solubility Freely soluble in benzene, carbon tetrachloride, chloroform, and ether; soluble in ethanol (95%), hexane, and propylene glycol; practically insoluble in water.[8]
Specific surface area
0.51–0.53 m^2/g

SEM 1: Excipient: stearic acid, 95% (*Emersol 153*); manufacturer: Emery Industries; lot no.: 18895; magnification: 120×; voltage: 10 kV.

S

SEM 2: Excipient: stearic acid, food grade (*Emersol 6332*); manufacturer: Emery Industries; lot no.: 18895; magnification: 120×; voltage: 10 kV.

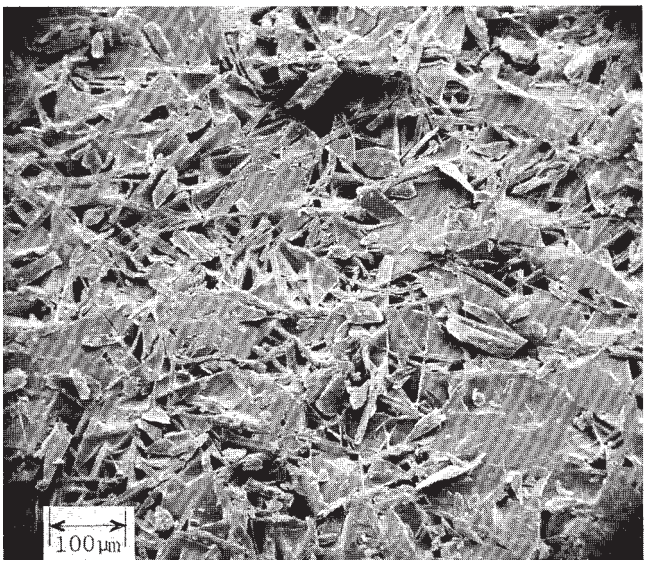


Table II: Pharmacopeial specifications for stearic acid.

Test	JP XV	PhEur 6.5	USP32–NF27
Identification	—	+	—
Characters	—	+	—
Acidity	—	+	—
Acid value	194–210	194–212	—
Appearance	—	+	—
Content of stearic acid	—	+	⩾40.0%
Stearic acid 50	—	40–60%	—
Stearic acid 70	—	60–80%	—
Stearic acid 95	—	⩾90.0%	—
Content of stearic and palmitic acids	—	+	⩾90.0%
Stearic acid 50	—	⩾90.0%	—
Stearic acid 70	—	⩾90.0%	—
Stearic acid 95	—	⩾96.0%	—
Congealing temperature	56.0–72.0°C	—	⩾54°C
Freezing point	—	+	—
Stearic acid 50	—	53–59°C	—
Stearic acid 70	—	57–64°C	—
Stearic acid 95	—	64–69°C	—
Iodine value	⩽4.0	+	⩽4.0
Stearic acid 50	—	⩽4.0%	—
Stearic acid 70	—	⩽4.0%	—
Stearic acid 95	—	⩽1.5%	—
Nickel	—	⩽1 ppm	—
Residue on ignition	⩽0.1%	—	⩽0.1%
Heavy metals	⩽20 ppm	—	⩽0.001%
Neutral fat or paraffin	+	—	+
Mineral acid	+	—	+

See also Section 17 and Table III.

11 Stability and Storage Conditions

Stearic acid is a stable material; an antioxidant may also be added to it; *see* Section 13. The bulk material should be stored in a well-closed container in a cool, dry place.

12 Incompatibilities

Stearic acid is incompatible with most metal hydroxides and may be incompatible with bases, reducing agents, and oxidizing agents.

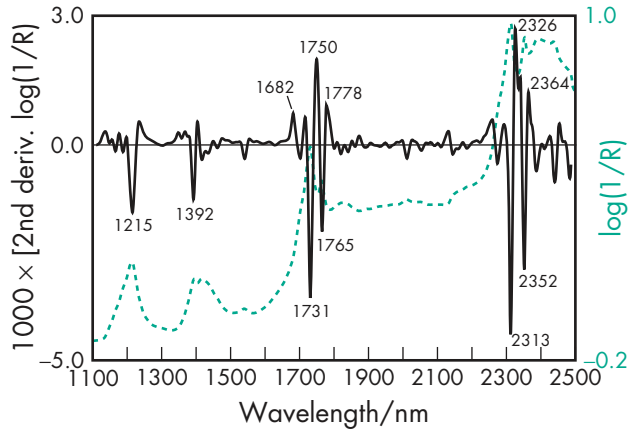


Figure 1: Near-infrared spectrum of stearic acid measured by reflectance.

Ointment bases made with stearic acid may show evidence of drying out or lumpiness due to such a reaction when compounded with zinc or calcium salts.

A number of differential scanning calorimetry studies have investigated the compatibility of stearic acid with drugs. Although such laboratory studies have suggested incompatibilities, e.g. with naproxen,[9] they may not necessarily be applicable to formulated products.

Stearic acid has been reported to cause pitting in the film coating of tablets applied using an aqueous film-coating technique; the pitting was found to be a function of the melting point of the stearic acid.[10]

13 Method of Manufacture

Stearic acid is manufactured by hydrolysis of fat by continuous exposure to a countercurrent stream of high-temperature water and fat in a high-pressure chamber. The resultant mixture is purified by vacuum steam distillation and the distillates are then separated using selective solvents.

Stearic acid may also be manufactured by the hydrogenation of cottonseed and other vegetable oils; by the hydrogenation and subsequent saponification of olein followed by recrystallization from alcohol; and from edible fats and oils by boiling with sodium hydroxide, separating any glycerin, and decomposing the resulting soap with sulfuric or hydrochloric acid. The stearic acid is then subsequently separated from any oleic acid by cold expression.

Stearic acid is derived from edible fat sources unless it is intended for external use, in which case nonedible fat sources may be used. The USP32–NF27 states that stearic acid labeled solely for external use is exempt from the requirement that it be prepared from edible sources. Stearic acid may contain a suitable antioxidant such as 0.005% w/w butylated hydroxytoluene.

14 Safety

Stearic acid is widely used in oral and topical pharmaceutical formulations; it is also used in cosmetics and food products. Stearic acid is generally regarded as a nontoxic and nonirritant material. However, consumption of excessive amounts may be harmful.

LD_{50} (mouse, IV): 23 mg/kg[11]
LD_{50} (rat, IV): 21.5 mg/kg

15 Handling Precautions

Observe normal precautions appropriate to the circumstances and quantity of material handled. Stearic acid dust may be irritant to the skin, eyes, and mucous membranes. Eye protection, gloves, and a dust respirator are recommended. Stearic acid is combustible.

Table III: Specifications of different stearic acid grades.

Product	Stearic acid content (%)	Melting range (°C)	Acid value	Iodine value	Saponification value	Unsaponifiable matter (%)
Hystrene 5016	44	54.5–56.5	206–210	⩽0.5	206–211	⩽0.2
Hystrene 7018	68.5	61.0–62.5	200–205	⩽0.5	200–206	⩽0.2
Hystrene 9718	90	66.5–68.0	196–201	⩽0.8	196–202	⩽0.3
Industrene 7018	65	58.0–62.0	200–207	⩽1.5	200–208	⩽0.5
Industrene 8718	87	64.5–67.5	196–201	⩽2.0	196–202	⩽1.5

16 Regulatory Status

GRAS listed. Accepted as a food additive in Europe (fatty acids). Included in the FDA Inactive Ingredients Database (sublingual tablets; oral capsules, solutions, suspensions, and tablets; topical and vaginal preparations). Included in nonparenteral medicines licensed in the UK. Included in the Canadian List of Acceptable Non-medicinal Ingredients.

17 Related Substances

Calcium stearate; magnesium stearate; polyoxyethylene stearates; purified stearic acid; zinc stearate.

Purified stearic acid

Empirical formula $C_{18}H_{36}O_2$
Molecular weight 284.47
CAS number [57-11-4]
Synonyms Octadecanoic acid
Acid value 195–200
Boiling point 361°C
Density 0.847 g/cm^3 at 70°C
Flash point 196°C
Iodine number ⩽1.5
Melting point 66–69°C
Refractive index n_D^{80} = 1.4299
Solubility Soluble 1 in 5 parts benzene, 1 in 6 parts carbon tetrachloride, 1 in 2 parts chloroform, 1 in 15 parts ethanol, 1 in 3 parts ether; practically insoluble in water.
Vapor density (relative) 9.80 (air = 1)
Comments The USP32–NF27 describes purified stearic acid as a mixture of stearic acid ($C_{18}H_{36}O_2$) and palmitic acid ($C_{16}H_{32}O_2$), which together constitute not less than 96.0% of the total content. The content of $C_{18}H_{36}O_2$ is no less than 90.0% of the total.

18 Comments

Stearic acid is one of the materials that have been selected for harmonization by the Pharmacopeial Discussion Group. For further information see the General Information Chapter <1196> in the USP32–NF27, the General Chapter 5.8 in PhEur 6.0, along with the 'State of Work' document on the PhEur EDQM website, and also the General Information Chapter 8 in the JP XV.

A wide range of different grades of stearic acid are commercially available that have varying chemical compositions and hence different physical and chemical properties; *see* Table III.[12] Stearic acid is highly soluble in structurally diverse solvents. Stearic acid/solvent packing within a 24.8 ?^{3} cubic volume explains the stoichiometry of stearic acid solubility at multiple temperatures in multiple solvents.[13]

In one study the release of an active drug in a formulation containing stearic acid was independent of compression pressure in the range 1–7 tons; the particle size of the stearic acid did have a significant influence on the drug release.[14]

A potential application of stearic acid is in the preparation of 'cushioning pellets', composed of stearic acid : microcrystalline cellulose (4 : 1 w/w). The use of these pellets may avoid rupture of the coating of pellets during the compression step of manufacturing.[15]

A specification for stearic acid is contained in the Food Chemicals Codex (FCC).[16]

The EINECS number for stearic acid is 200-313-4.

19 Specific References

1 Iranloye TA, Parrott EL. Effects of compression force, particle size, and lubricants on dissolution rate. *J Pharm Sci* 1978; **67**: 535–539.
2 Jarosz PJ, Parrott EL. Effect of tablet lubricants on axial and radial work of failure. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1982; **8**: 445–453.
3 Mitrevej KT, Augsburger LL. Adhesion of tablets in a rotary tablet press II: effects of blending time, running time, and lubricant concentration. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1982; **8**: 237–282.
4 Musikabhumma P *et al*. Evaluation of stearic acid and polyethylene glycol as binders for tabletting potassium phenethicillin. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1982; **8**: 169–188.
5 Zhang Q *et al*. Studies on the cyclosporin A loaded stearic acid nanoparticles. *Int J Pharm* 2000; **200**: 153–159.
6 Suzuki K. Rheological study of vanishing cream. *Cosmet Toilet* 1976; **91**(6): 23–31.
7 Mores LR. Application of stearates in cosmetic creams and lotions. *Cosmet Toilet* 1980; **95**(3): 79, 81–84.
8 Yalkowsky SH, He Y, eds. *Handbook of Solubility Data*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 2003; 1119–1120.
9 Botha SA, Lötter AP. Compatibility study between naproxen and tablet excipients using differential scanning calorimetry. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1990; **16**: 673–683.
10 Rowe RC, Forse SF. Pitting: a defect on film-coated tablets. *Int J Pharm* 1983; **17**: 347–349.
11 Lewis RJ, ed. *Sax's Dangerous Properties of Industrial Materials*, 11th edn. New York: Wiley, 2004; 3229–3300.
12 Phadke DS *et al*. Evaluation of batch-to-batch and manufacturer-to-manufacturer variability in the physical properties of talc and stearic acid. *Drug Dev Ind Pharm* 1994; **20**: 859–871.
13 Schmidt WF *et al*. Stearic acid solubility and cubic phase volume. *Chem Phys Lipids* 2006; **142**(1–2): 23–32.
14 Killen BU, Corrigon OI. Factors influencing drug release from stearic acid based compacts. *Int J Pharm* 2001; **228**(1–2): 189–198.
15 Qi XL *et al*. Preparation of tablets containing enteric-coated diclofenac sodium pellets. *Yao Xue Xue Bao* 2008; **43**(1): 97–101.
16 *Food Chemicals Codex*, 6th edn. Bethesda, MD: United States Pharmacopeia, 2008; 927.

20 General References

Allen LV. Featured excipient: capsule and tablet lubricants. *Int J Pharm Compound* 2000; **4**(5): 390–392404–405.
European Directorate for the Quality of Medicines and Healthcare (EDQM). European Pharmacopoeia – State Of Work Of International Harmonisation. *Pharmeuropa* 2009; 21(1): 142–143. http://www.edqm.eu/site/-614.html (accessed 25 February 2009).
Pilpel N. Metal stearates in pharmaceuticals and cosmetics. *Manuf Chem Aerosol News* 1971; **42**(10): 37–40.
Oxford University. Material safety data sheet: Stearic acid, 2009. http://msds.chem.ox.ac.uk/ST/stearic_acid.html (accessed 25 February 2009).
ScienceLab.com, Inc. Material safety data sheet: Stearic acid, .2005.

21 Author

LV Allen Jr.

22 Date of Revision

25 February 2009.

S

recommended. Stearyl alcohol is not a fire hazard, although it will burn and may give off noxious fumes containing carbon monoxide.

16 Regulatory Status

Included in the FDA Inactive Ingredients Database (oral tablets, rectal topical, and vaginal preparations). Included in nonparenteral medicines licensed in the UK. Included in the Canadian List of Acceptable Non-medicinal Ingredients.

17 Related Substances

Cetostearyl alcohol; cetyl alcohol.

18 Comments

The EINECS number for stearyl alcohol is 204-017-6. The PubChem Compound ID (CID) for stearyl alcohol is 8221.

19 Specific References

1 Egan RR, Portwood O. Higher alcohols in skin lotions. *Cosmet Perfum* 1974; **89**(3): 39–42.
2 Alexander P. Organic rheological additives. *Manuf Chem* 1986; **57**(9): 49, 52.
3 Cao DY *et al*. Preparation of tetramethylpyrazine phosphate pulsed-release tablets. *Chin J New Drugs* 2005; **14**(6): 723–726.
4 Cao QR *et al*. Photoimages and the release characteristics of lipophilic matrix tablets containing highly water-soluble potassium citrate with high drug loadings. *Int J Pharm* 2007; **339**(1–2): 19–24.
5 Kaiho F *et al*. Application of fatty alcohols to pharmaceutical dosage forms. *Yakuzaigaku* 1984; **44**: 99–102.
6 Tanabe K *et al*. Effect of additives on release of ibuprofen from suppositories. *Yakuzaigaku* 1988; **48**: 262–269.
7 Passerini N *et al*. Controlled release of verapamil hydrochloride from waxy microparticles prepared by spray congealing. *J Control Release* 2003; **88**(2): 263–275.
8 Liggins RT, Burt HM. Paclitaxel loaded poly(L-lactic acid) microspheres: properties of microspheres made with low molecular weight polymers. *Int J Pharm* 2001; **222**(1): 19–33.
9 Takahashi Y *et al*. Trial for transdermal administration of sulfonylureas. *J Pharm Soc Japan* 1997; **117**: 1022–1027.
10 Weller PJ. Stearyl alcohol. Kibbe AH, ed. *Handbook of Pharmaceutical Excipients*, 3rd edn. London and Washington, DC: Pharmaceutical Press and American Pharmaceutical Association, 2000; 537–538.
11 Gaul LE. Dermatitis from cetyl and stearyl alcohols. *Arch Dermatol* 1969; **99**: 593.
12 Fisher AA. Contact dermatitis from stearyl alcohol and propylene glycol. *Arch Dermatol* 1974; **110**: 636.
13 Black H. Contact dermatitis from stearyl alcohol in Metosyn (flucinonide) cream. *Contact Dermatitis* 1975; **1**: 125.
14 Cronin E. *Contact Dermatitis*. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone, 1980; 808.
15 Yesudian PD, King CM. Allergic contact dermatitis from stearyl alcohol in Efudix cream. *Contact Dermatitis* 2001; **45**: 313–314.
16 Lewis RJ, ed. *Sax's Dangerous Properties of Industrial Materials*, 11th edn. New York: Wiley, 2004; 2758.

20 General References

Barry BW. Continuous shear, viscoelastic and spreading properties of a new topical vehicle, FAPG base. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1973; **25**: 131–137.
Cognis. Product literature: *Speziol C18 Pharma,* 2004.
Cognis. Product literature: *Drug-Delivery Agents* – Pharmaline, 2008.
Japan Pharmaceutical Excipients Council. *Japanese Pharmaceutical Excipients Directory 1996*. Tokyo: Yakuji Nippo, 1996; 527.
Madan PL *et al*. Microencapsulation of a waxy solid: wall thickness and surface appearance studies. *J Pharm Sci* 1974; **63**: 280–284.
Rowe RC. A quantitative assessment of the reactivity of the fatty alcohols with cetrimide using immersion calorimetry. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1987; **39**: 50–52.
Sasol. *Product literature: Sasol olefins and surfactants,* 2005.
Schott H, Han SK. Effect of inorganic additives on solutions of nonionic surfactants II. *J Pharm Sci* 1975; **64**: 658–664.
Wan LSC, Poon PKC. The interfacial activity of sodium lauryl sulfate in the presence of alcohols. *Can J Pharm Sci* 1970; **5**: 104–107.

21 Author

RT Guest.

22 Date of Revision

12 February 2009.

S

Sucralose

1 Nonproprietary Names

USP-NF: Sucralose

2 Synonyms

Splenda; sucralosa; sucralosum; *SucraPlus*; TGS; 1′,4′,6′-trichloro-galactosucrose; 4,1′,6′-trichloro-4,1′,6′-trideoxy-*galacto*-sucrose.

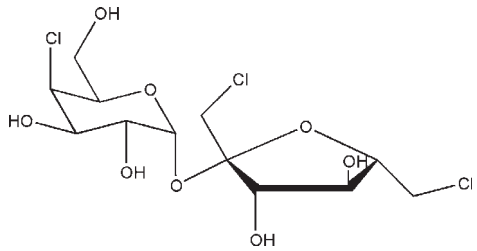
3 Chemical Name and CAS Registry Number

1,6-Dichloro-1,6-dideoxy-β-D-fructofuranosyl-4-chloro-4-deoxy-α-D-galactopyranoside [56038-13-2]

4 Empirical Formula and Molecular Weight

$C_{12}H_{19}Cl_3O_8$ 397.64

5 Structural Formula



6 Functional Category

Sweetening agent.

Index

Greek characters (α, β, γ etc.), numerical prefixes (50-, 1,2- etc.) and prefixes such as *para*, *ortho*, *O*-, *N*-, D-, L- etc. are excluded from alphabetization; page numbers in **bold** refer to monograph titles.

905 (mineral hydrocarbons), 447

A-17, 306
A-46, 307
ABIL, 233
ABIL 20, 234
Abrasives, calcium phosphate
  dibasic anhydrous, 94
  dibasic dihydrate, 97
Absolute alcohol, 18
Absorbable gelatin, 278
Absorption enhancers, vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate, 764
Acacia, **1**, 33, 147, 300
Acacia gum, 1
Acaciae gummi, 1
Accelerate, 121
Acconon, 542
Ac-Di-Sol, 206–207
Ace K, 3
Aceite de alazor, 610
Aceite de cartamo, 610
Aceite de coco, 184
Aceite de soja, 682
Aceloquat CPB, 158
Acesulfame K, 3
Acesulfame potassium, **3**, 29, 606, 609
  aspartame synergy, 50
  sweetness *vs*. sucrose, 3
  with sodium cyclamate, 644
Acesulfamum kalicum, 3
Acetate
  brown, 82
  gray, 82
Acetate of lime, 82
(Acetato-O)phenylmercury, 492
Acetazolamide, 399
Acetdimethylamide, 241
Acetic acid, 6
  (2-butenylidene), 672
  calcium salt, 82
  dilute, 6
Acetic acid, calcium salt, 82
Acetic acid, cellulose ester, 141
Acetic acid dimethylamide, 241
Acetic acid ethenyl ester, polymer with 1-ethenyl-2-pyrrolidinone, 196
Acetic acid ethyl ester, 253
Acetic acid, ethylene ester polymer with ethane, 268
Acetic acid, glacial, **5**
Acetic acid, sodium salt, 620
Acetic acid vinyl ester, polymer with 1-vinyl-2-pyrrolidinone, 196
Acetic acid, zinc salt, 791
Acetic acid[(2*S*,3*S*,4*R*,5*R*)-4-acetoxy-2,5-bis(acetoxymethyl)-2-[[(2*R*,3*R*,4*S*,5*R*,6*R*)-3,4,5-triacetoxy-6-(acetoxymethyl)-2-tetrahydropyranyl]oxy]-3-tetrahydrofuranyl]ester, 707
Acetic ester, 253
Acetic ether, 253
Acetone, **7**
Acetone chloroform, 166
Acetonum, 7
Acetoxyethane, 253
Acetoxyphenylmercury, 492
Acetyl cellulose, 141
Acetyl phthalyl cellulose, 143
Acetylated lanolin, 380
Acetylbutyl citrate, 8
Acetylcitric acid, tributyl ester, 8
Acetylcitric acid, tributyl ester, 8
Acetyldimethylamine, 241
Acetyltributyl citrate, **8**, 10, 750, 756–757
Acetyltriethyl citrate, 9–10, 750, 756–757
Acid fosforico, 503
Acid sodium phosphate, 659
Acide phosphorique, 503
Acidi methacrylici et ethylis acrylatis polymerisatum, 525
Acidi methacrylici et methylis methacrylatis polymerisatum, 525
Acidicum penteticum, 480
Acidifying agents
  adipic acid, 11
  ammonium chloride, 42
  citric acid monohydrate, 181
  glacial acetic acid, 5
  hydrochloric acid, 308
    diluted, 309
  lactic acid, 355
  phosphoric acid, 503
  propionic acid, 586
  sulfuric acid, 719
  tartaric acid, 731
Acido trimico, 739
Acidulants
  fumaric acid, 276
  lactic acid, 355
  maleic Acid, 410
  malic acid, 411
  monobasic sodium phosphate, 659
  phosphoric acid, 503
  tartaric acid, 731
Acidum aceticum glaciale, 5
Acidum adipicum, 11
Acidum alginicum, 20
Acidum ascorbicum, 43
Acidum benzoicum, 61
Acidum boricum, 68
Acidum citricum anhydricum, 183
Acidum citricum monohydricum, 181
Acidum edeticum, 247
Acidum hydrochloridum concentratum, 308
Acidum hydrochloridum dilutum, 309
Acidum lacticum, 355
Acidum maleicum, 410
Acidum malicum, 411
Acidum oleicum, 466
Acidum palmiticum, 473
Acidum phosphoricum dilutum, 504
Acidum phosphorum concentratum, 503
Acidum sorbicum, 672
Acidum stearicum, 697
Acidum sulfuricum, 719
Acidum tartaricum, 731
Acifloctin, 11
Acinetten, 11
Aclame, 28
Acriflavine hydrochloride, 54
Acritamer, 110
Acryl-EZE, 525–526
Acryl-EZE MP, 526
Acrylic acid polymer, 110
Acrypol, 110–111
Actapulgite, 51
Activated alumina, 37
Activated aluminum oxide, 37
Activated attapulgite, 51
Actylol, 256
Acytol, 256
Adeps lanae, 378
Adeps lanae cum aqua, 380
Adeps lanae hydrogenatus, 379
Adeps neutralis, 722
Adeps solidus, 722
Adhesives
  carbomers, 110
  dextrin, 220
  hypromellose, 327
  poly(methylvinyl ether/maleic anhydride), 534
  see also Mucoadhesives
Adilactetten, 11
Adipic acid, **11**
Adju-Phos, 38
Adsorbent, magnesium carbonate, 397
Adsorbents
  aluminum hydroxide adjuvant, 34
  aluminum oxide, 37
  aluminum phosphate adjuvant, 38
  attapulgite, 51
  bentonite, 53
  cellulose, powdered, 136
  colloidal silicon dioxide, 185
  hectorite, 301
  kaolin, 352
  magnesium aluminum silicate, 393
  microcrystalline cellulose, 129
  pectin, 478
  polycarbophil, 509
  saponite, 612
  talc, 728
Advantia, 329
Advantose 100, 422, 424
Advantose FS 95, 273
Aeropres, 307
Aeropres 17, 306
Aeropres 31, 306
Aeropres 108, 306
Aerosil, 185–186
Aerosil 130, 310
Aerosil R972, 309–310
Aerosol propellants *see* Propellants
Aerosol Solvent Extraction Systems (ASES), carbon dioxide, 116
Aethylis acetas, 253
Aethylium aceticum, 253
Aethylum hydrobenzoicum, 270
Aextreff CT, 476
Afrodit, 612
Agar, **13**
  Japan, 13
Agar-agar, 13
Agar-agar flake, 13
Agar-agar gum, 13
Agaropectin, 13
Agarose, 13
Agidol, 75
Air displacement gases
  carbon dioxide, 115
  nitrogen, 461

Airvol, 564
Akofine, 762
Akosoft, 722
Akosol, 722
Akucell, 118
Alabaster, 105
Alba, 14
Albagel, 53
Alberger, 637
Albuconn, 14
Albumin, **14**
human, 14
Albumin human solution, 14
Albumin Solution, 14
human, 14
Albuminar, 14
Albumini humani solutio, 14
Albumisol, 14
Albuspan, 14
Albutein, 14
Alcohol, **17**
absolute, 18
dehydrated, 18–19
denatured, 18
dilute, 18–19
Alcohol benzylicus, 64
Alcohol cetylicus, 155
Alcohol cetylicus et stearylicus, 150
Alcohol denaturants
denatonium benzoate, 217
diethyl phthalate, 230
sucrose octaacetate, 707
Alcohol isopropylicus, 346
Alcohol miristilo, 456
Alcohol oleicus, 468
Alcohol stearylicus, 700
Alcoholes adipis lanae, 382
Alcoholia lanae, 382
Alcoholic shellac solution, 618
Alcolanum, 382
Alcotex, 564
Aldo MO, 288
Aleuritic acid, 618
Alfadex Betadex, 210
Alfadexum, 210
Algaroba, 146
Algin, 83, 622
Alginato calcico, 83
Alginato sodico, 622
Alginic acid, **20**, 41, 84, 567, 595, 624
Alginic acid, ammonium salt, 41
Alginic acid, calcium salt, 83
Alginic acid, potassium salt, 566
Alginic acid, propylene glycol ester, 594
Alginic acid, sodium salt, 622
Alhydrogel, 34
Aliphatic polyesters, **23**, 356, 516
Alitame, 4, 28, 50, 606, 609, 644
Alkalizing agents
ammonia solution, 39
calcium hydroxide, 91
diethanolamine, 228
monoethanolamine, 450
potassium bicarbonate, 570
potassium citrate, 574
potassium hydroxide, 576
sodium bicarbonate, 629
sodium borate, 633
sodium carbonate, 635
sodium citrate dihydrate, 640
sodium hydroxide, 648
triethanolamine, 754
Alkyl dimethyl benzyl ammonium chloride, 56
Alkylbenzyldimethylammonium chloride, 56
Alkyldimethyl(phenylmethyl)ammonium chloride, 56
Alkyltrimethylammonium bromides, 153
Allomaleic acid, 276
Allomalenic acid, 276
Allopurinol, 238
All-*rac*-α-tocopherol, 31
All-*rac*-α-tocopheryl acetate, 32
Almond oil, **29**, 109, 185, 200, 203, 259, 477, 611, 615
refined, 30
Almond oil, bitter, 29
Almond Oil, Virgin, 29
Alpha aluminum oxide, 37
Alpha tocopherol, **31–32**, 46, 765
and ascorbyl palmitate, 31
and lecithin, 31
and linoleic acid, 31
and methyl linolenate, 31
natural, 32
synthetic, 31
see also Tocopherol
(2*R*,4′*R*,8′*R*)-Alpha-tocopherol, 31
d-Alpha tocopheryl acetate, 32
d-Alpha tocopheryl acid succinate, 32
Alpha-cellulose, 136
Alpha-cycloamylose, 210
Alpha-cyclodextrin, 210
Alpha-dextrin, 210
Altalc, 728
Alum, 567
Alum flour, 567
Alum meal, 567
Alum potassium, 567
Alumen, 567
Alumina, 37
activated, 37
calcined, 37
tabular, 37
Alumina, calcined, 37
Alumina, tabular, 37
Aluminii hydroxidum hydricum ad adsorptionem, 34
Aluminii magnesii silicas, 393
Aluminium hydroxide adjuvant, 34
Aluminium Hydroxide, Hydrated, for Adsorption, 34
Aluminium hydroxyphosphate, 38
Aluminium Magnesium Silicate, 393
Aluminium oxyhydroxide, 34
Aluminosilicic acid, 393
Aluminum, dihydroxy (octadecanoate-O-), 35
Aluminum distearate, 36
Aluminum hydroxide, 400
Aluminum hydroxide adjuvant, **34**, 39
Aluminum hydroxyphosphate, 38
Aluminum magnesium salt, 393
Aluminum magnesium silicate, 393
Aluminum monobasic stearate., 36
Aluminum monostearate, **35**
Aluminum oxide, **37**
activated, 37
Aluminum oxide alumite, 37
Aluminum oxyhydroxide, 34
Aluminum phosphate, 38
Aluminum phosphate adjuvant, 35, 38
Aluminum potassium alum, 567
Aluminum potassium disulfate, 567
Aluminum potassium sulfate, 567
Aluminum potassium sulfate anhydrous, 567
Aluminum potassium sulfate dodecahydrate, 567
Aluminum Potassium Sulfate Hydrate, 567
Aluminum silicate, 271
hydrated, 53, 55, 352–353
hydrous, 352
Aluminum stearate, 35–36
Aluminum trioxide, 37
Aluminum tristearate, 36
Aluminum-saponite, 612
Amalty, 414
Amberlite, 506
Amberlite IR-120, 505
Amberlite IRA-400, 505
Amberlite IRP-58, 505
Amberlite IRP-64, 505–506
Amberlite IRP-67, 505
Amberlite IRP-69, 505
Amberlite IRP-88, 504–505
Ambroxol, 478
Amerchol CAB, 484
Amerchol L-101, 449
Ametox, 671
Amfetamine sulfate, 396
Amido, 685
Amidon, 685
Amilo, 685
Amino Methacrylate Copolymer, 525
Aminoacetic acid, 295
2-aminoacetic acid, 295
(3*S*)-3-Amino-4-[[(1*S*)-1-benzyl-2-methoxy-2-oxoethyl]amino]-4-oxobutanoic acid, 48
5-Amino-1,3-bis(2-ethylhexyl)hexahydro-5-methylpyrimidine, 304
γ-Aminobutyric acid lactam, 600
4-aminobutyric acid lactam, 600
γ-aminobutyric lactam, 600
γ-aminobutyrolactam, 600
3-amino-*N*-(α-carboxyphenethyl)succinamic acid *N*-methyl ester, 48
2-Amino-2-deoxy-(1,4)-β-D-glucopyranan, 159
5-amino-1,3-di(β-ethylhexyl)hexahydro-5-methylpyrimidine, 304
Aminoethanoic acid, 295
2-Aminoethanol, 450
β-Aminoethyl alcohol, 450
α-Aminoisocaproic acid, 387
3-amino-*N*-(α-methoxycarbonylphenethyl)succinamic acid, 48
α-Amino-γ-methylmercaptobutyric acid, 436
2-amino-4-methylpentanoic acid, 387
(2*S*)-2-Amino-4-methylsulfanylbutanoic acid, 436
(*S*)-2-amino-4-(methylthio)butanoic acid, 436
2-amino-4-(methylthio)butyric acid, 436
α-amino-γ-methylvaleric acid, 387
2-amino-4-methylvaleric acid, 387
Amiodarone, incompatibilities, sodium bicarbonate, 631
Ammonia, 39
Ammonia solution, **39–40**, 43
concentrated, 39
dilute, 40
strong, 39
Ammonia water, 40
stronger, 39
Ammoniaca, 39
Ammoniacum, 39
Ammoniae solution concentrata, 39
Ammonii chloridum, 42
Ammonio Methacrylate Copolymer, 525
Ammonio Methacrylate Copolymer Dispersion, 525
Ammonio Methacrylate Copolymer (Type A), 525
Ammonio Methacrylate Copolymer (Type B), 525
Ammonio methacrylatis copolymerum, 525
Ammonium alginate, 21, 41, 567
Ammonium chloride, **42**
Ammonium muriate, 42
Ammonium polymannuronate, 41
Amorphous silica, synthetic, 185

Amorphous wax, 775
Amoxicillin, 353
Ampicillin, 353
Amygdalae oleum raffinatum, 30
Amygdalae oleum virginale, 29
Amylum, 685
Amylum pregelificatum, 691
Anatase, 743
Anatase titanium dioxide, 741
Anhydrite, 105
Anhydrous 60M, 359
Anhydrous Calcium Hydrogen Phosphate, 94
Anhydrous calcium sulfate, 105
Anhydrous chlorbutol, 166
Anhydrous citric acid, 183, 630
Anhydrous dextrose, 224–225
Anhydrous Dibasic Calcium Phosphate, 94
Anhydrous dibasic sodium phosphate, 656
Anhydrous Direct Tableting (DT), 359
Anhydrous DT High Velocity, 359
Anhydrous ethanol, 18
Anhydrous ferric oxide, 340
Anhydrous D-(+)-glucopyranose, 224
Anhydrous glucose, 224
Anhydrous gypsum, 105
Anhydrous Impalpable, 359
Anhydrous Lactose, 359
Anhydrous lactose, O-β-D-galactopyranosyl-(1→4)-β-D-glucopyranose, 362
Anhydrous lanolin, 378
Anhydrous monobasic sodium phosphate, 659
Anhydrous Sodium Carbonate, 635
Anhydrous sodium citrate, 642
Anhydrous sodium propionate, 662
Anhydrous sulfate of lime, 105
Anhydrous trisodium citrate, 642
Anionic emulsifying wax, 770
  see also Emulsifying wax, anionic
Anionic surfactants *see* Surfactants, anionic
Annalin, 107
Antacid, calcium hydroxide, 91
Antacids, 399
  aluminum phosphate adjuvant, 39
  magnesium carbonate, 397
Antiadherents, leucine, 387
Antibacterial agents
  chlorocresol, 169
  diazolidinyl urea, 338
  dimethyl sulfoxide, 240
  glacial acetic acid, 5
  imidurea, 337
  iodine/edetic acid, 247
  phenylmercuric acetate, 492
  phenylmercuric borate, 495
  phenylmercuric hydroxide, 496–497
  potassium sorbate, 579
  sodium hydroxide, 649
  sorbic acid, 579–580
  thymol, 739
  see also Antiseptics; Disinfectants; Preservatives
Antibacterial preservatives *see* Antibacterial agents; Preservatives
Antibrowning agents, sodium metabisulfite, 654
Anticaking agents
  calcium phosphate, tribasic, 99
  calcium silicate, 101
  colloidal silicon dioxide, 185
  hydrophobic colloidal silica, 309
  magnesium oxide, 400
  magnesium silicate, 402
  magnesium trisilicate, 408
  talc, 728
Anticapping agents *see* Cap locking preventatives
Anticoagulants, citric acid monohydrate, 181
Antidusting agents, polyethylene alkyl ethers, 537
Antifoaming agents
  dimethicone, 233
  oleyl alcohol, 468
  polypropylene glycol 2000, 543
  simethicone, 619
Antifungal agents
  benzoic acid, 61
  butylene glycol, 77
  butylparaben, 78
  chlorocresol, 168–169
  coconut oil, 184
  dimethyl sulfoxide, 240
  ethylparaben, 270
  glacial acetic acid, 5
  imidurea, 337
  methylparabens, 442
  phenylmercuric acetate, 492
  phenylmercuric borate, 495
  phenylmercuric hydroxide, 496–497
  potassium sorbate, 579
  propylparaben, 596
  sodium propionate, 661
  sodium thiosulfate, 671
  sporocides, chlorocresol, 169
  thymol, 739
  vanillin, 760
  see also Preservatives
Antimicrobial preservatives *see* Antibacterial agents; Antifungal agents; Preservatives
Antioxidants
  alpha tocopherol, 31, 109
  ascorbic acid, 43, 45
  ascorbyl palmitate, 46
  butylated hydroxyanisole, 73, 587
  butylated hydroxytoluene, 75, 587
  carbon dioxide, 115
  chelating agents, 247
  citric acid monohydrate, 181
  erythorbic acid, 250
  ethyl oleate, 259
  fumaric acid, 276
  malic acid, 411
  methionine, 436
  monothioglycerol, 454
  phosphoric acid, 503
  potassium metabisulfite, 577
  propionic acid, 586
  propyl gallate, 587, 589
  sodium ascorbate, 625
  sodium bisulfite, 655
  sodium formaldehyde sulfoxylate, 645
  sodium metabisulfite, 654–655
  sodium sulfite, 655, 669
  sodium thiosulfate, 671
  sulfur dioxide, 718
  synergists
    citric acid monohydrate, 181
    tartaric acid, 731
  thymol, 739
  tocopherol (*see* Antioxidants, alpha tocopherol)
  vitamin E, 33
  vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate, 764
  see also Preservatives
Antiseptics
  ammonium chloride, 42
  benzalkonium chloride, 56
  benzethonium chloride, 59
  bronopol, 70
  cetrimide, 152
  cetylpyridinium chloride, 157
  chlorhexidine, 162
  chloroxylenol, 176
  hexetidine, 304
  phenol, 485
  phenylmercuric acetate, 492
  phenylmercuric borate, 494
  phenylmercuric nitrate, 496
  thimerosal, 736
  thymol, 739
Antiviral agents
  benzalkonium chloride, 56
  butylated hydroxytoluene, 75
  cellulose acetate phthalate (CAP), 144
  sodium hydroxide, 649
AnyCoat C, 327
Apifil, 780
APM, 48
Apple acid, 411, 413
Apricot kernel oil PEG 300 esters, 557
Aptal, 168
Aqoat, 330
Aqoat AS-HF/HG, 330
Aqoat AS-LF/LG, 330
Aqoat AS-MF/MG, 330
Aqua, 766
Aqua ammonia, 39
Aqua purificata, 766
Aquacoat cPD, 143
Aquacoat ECD, 262–263
Aqualon, 262
Aqualon CMC, 118
Aquasorb, 118
Aqueous shellac solution, 618
Arabic gum, 1
D-arabino-2-hexulose, 273
Araboascorbic acid, 250
Arachidic acid
  cottonseed oil, 202
  peanut oil, 476
  sunflower oil, 721
Arachidis oleum raffinatum, 476
Arachis Oil, 476
Arachis Oil, Refined, 476
Araldite 502, 225
Arbocel, 136
Arcton, 173
Arcton 22, 172
Argilla, 352
Argobase EU, 485
Argowax, 382
Arlatone, 542
Arosol, 488
Artificial almond oil, 29
Artificial sweeteners *see* Sweetening agents
Artificial vinegar, 6
Asapic, 11
Ascend, 746
Ascorbic acid, **43**, 47, 251, 626
  incompatibilities
    sodium starch glycolate, 665
    sucrose, 706
Ascorbic acid ethyl oleate, 259
L-Ascorbic acid 6-hexadecanoate, 46
L-Ascorbic acid monosodium salt, 625
L-Ascorbic acid 6-palmitate, 46
Ascorbyl palmitate, 45–46, 626
  and alpha tocopherol, 31
Ascorbylis palmitas, 46
Aseptoform M, 441
Aseptoform P, 596
Ashacel, 262
Aspartame, 29, 48, 461, 606, 609
  acesulfame potassium synergy, 50
  sweetness, *vs.* neotame, 460
  sweetness *vs.* sucrose, 48
  with saccharin, 607
  with saccharin sodium, 610
Aspartame acesulfame, 50
Aspartamum, 48

Aspartyl phenylamine methyl ester, 48
3-(L-aspartyl-D-alaninamido)-2,2,4,4-tetramethylthietane, 28
L-aspartyl-D-alanine-*N*-(2,2,4,4-tetramethylthietan-3-yl)amide, 28
N-L-α-Aspartyl-L-phenylalanine 1-methyl ester, 48
L-α-Aspartyl-*N*-(2,2,4,4-tetramethyl-3-thietanyl)-D-alaninamide anhydrous, 28
L-α-Aspartyl-*N*-(2,2,4,4-tetramethyl-3-thietanyl)-D-alaninamide hydrate, 28
Aspasomes, 47
Aspirin, 405
Astringents
calcium hydroxide, 91
potassium alum, 567
sodium borate, 634
A-TAB, 94–96
ATBC, 8
ATEC, 10
Atlas G-695, 288
Attaclay, 51
Attacote, 51
Attagel, 51
Attapulgite, **51**, 302, 396, 613
activated, 51
colloidal activated, 51
Attapulgus, 51
Autism, 737
Auxite, 612
Avatech, 445
Avedex, 220
Avicel CE-15, 132
Avicel CL-611, 134
Avicel PH, 129
Avicel RC-501, 134
Avicel RC-581, 134
Avicel RC-591, 134
Avicel RC/CL, 134
Avol, 155
Avolin, 236
Azote, 461

Bactericides *see* Antibacterial agents
Bacteriostatic water for injection, 769
Baking soda, 629–630
Baktol, 168
Balocel Sanaq, 132
Barcroft CS90, 88
Barcroft CX50, 88
Barcroft CZ50, 88
Barrier creams, 777
Basic Butylated Methacrylate Copolymer, 525
Basic phenylmercury nitrate, 496
Bassorin, 744
Bayferrox 105M, 340
Bayferrox 306, 340
Bayferrox 920Z, 340
Beeswax, 780
substitute for, 148
Beeswax, White, 779
Beeswax, Yellow, 780
Beet sugar, 345, 703
Behenic acid
peanut oil, 476
sunflower oil, 721
Belite, 102
Benecel, 438
Benecel MHPC, 326
Beneo, 339
Bengal gelatin, 13
Bengal gum, 13
Bengal isinglass, 13
Benne oil, 614
Bentone 27, 302
Bentone 38, 302
Bentonite, **53**, 302, 353, 396, 613, 730
methylparabens incompatibility, 443
purified, 55
saponite similarity, 613
sol/gel preparation, 54
Bentonite magma, 55
Bentonitum, 53
Benzalkonii chloridum, 56
Benzalkonium chloride, **56**, 60, 153, 498
alternatives, thimerosal, 736
synergists, 247
Benzenecarboxylic acid, 61
1,2-benzenedicarboxylate, 236
Benzenedicarboxylic acid, 225
dibutyl ester of, 225
1,2-Benzenedicarboxylic acid bis(2-ethylhexyl) ester, 226
Benzene-*o*-dicarboxylic acid di-*n*-butyl ester, 225
1,2-Benzenedicarboxylic acid, diethyl ester, 230
Benzenedicarboxylic acid dimethyl ester, 236
1,2-Benzene-dicarboxylic acid dimethyl ester, 236
Benzeneethanol, 490
Benzeneformic acid, 61
Benzenemethanol, 64
Benzethonii chloridum, 59
Benzethonium chloride, 58–59, 153
1,2-Benzisothiazol-3(2 *H*)-one 1,1-dioxide, sodium salt, 608
1,2-Benzisothiazol-3(2*H*)-one 1,1-dioxide, 605
1,2-Benzisothiazolin-3-one 1,1-dioxide, 605
1,2-Benzisothiazolin-3-one 1,1-dioxide, sodium salt, 608
Benzoate of potash, 569
Benzoate of soda, 627
Benzocaine, incompatibilities, polyvinyl acetate phthalate, 563
Benzoic acid, **61**, 412, 570, 629, 761
Benzoic acid benzyl ester, 66
Benzoic acid phenylmethyl ester, 66
Benzoic acid potassium salt, 569
Benzoic acid sodium salt, 627
Benzoic acid sulfimide, 605
Benzoic sulfimide, 605
Benzosulfimide, 605
Benzyl alcohol, **64**
Benzyl benzoate, **66**
Benzyl carbinol, 490
Benzyl phenylformate, 66
Benzylbenzenecarboxylate, 66
Benzyldiethyl[(2,6-xylylcarbamolyl)methyl]ammonium benzoate anhydrous, 217
Benzyldiethyl[(2,6-xylylcarbamolyl)methyl]ammonium benzoate monohydrate, 217
Benzyldimethyl-[2-[2-(*p*-1,1,3,3-tetramethylbutylphenoxy) ethoxy]ethyl]ammonium chloride, 59
Benzylis benzoas, 66
Benzylmethanol, 490
Bergabest, 429
Beta tocopherol, 32–33
Beta-carotene, 193
Beta-cycloamylose, 210
Betadex, hydroxypropyl, 315
Beta-dextrin, 210
Betadexum, 210
BHA, 73
BHT, 75
Binding agents
acacia, 1
agar, 13
alginic acid, 20, 22
calcium carbonate, 86
calcium lactate, 92
carbomers, 110
carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 119
carrageenan, 122
cellulose acetate phthalate, 144
ceratonia, 146
chitosan, 159
copovidone, 197
corn starch and pregelatinized starch, 200
cottonseed oil, 202
dextrates, 218
dextrin, 220
dextrose, 222
ethylcellulose, 262
gelatin, 278
glyceryl behenate, 286
guar gum, 298
hydrogenated vegetable oil type I, 762
hydroxyethyl cellulose, 311
hydroxyethylmethyl cellulose, 314
hydroxypropyl cellulose, 318
low-substituted, 322
hydroxypropyl starch, 325
hypromellose, 326
inulin, 339
lactose, 364
liquid glucose, 282
magnesium aluminum silicate, 393
maltodextrin, 418
maltose, 423
methylcellulose, 438
microcrystalline cellulose, 130
pectin, 479
poloxamer, 507
polycarbophil, 509
polydextrose, 513
polyethylene oxide, 522
polymethacrylates, 526
povidone, 581
sodium alginate, 622
starch, 685
pregelatinized, 691
stearic acid, 697
sucrose, 703
sunflower oil, 721
tricaprylin, 751
vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate, 764
zein, 790
Bioabsorbables, aliphatic polyesters, 23
Bioadhesives
glyceryl monooleate, 289
hypromellose, 326
polycarbophil, 509
Bioadhesives *see also* Adhesives; Mucoadhesives
Biocompatibles
aliphatic polyesters, 23
sulfobutylether β-cyclodextrin, 714
Biodegradable materials
aliphatic polyesters, 23, 27
biodegradable polymers, 23, 27
glyceryl monostearate, 291
glyceryl palmitostearate, 293
phospholipids, 499
poly-DL-(lactic acid), 515
Biopure 100, 337
Bio-sorb, 695
N,*N*-bis[2-[bis(carboxymethyl)amino]ethyl], 480
2-[Bis[2-(bis(carboxymethyl)amino)ethyl]amino] acetic acid, 480
N,*N*-bis[2-[bis(carboxymethyl)amino]ethyl] glycine, 480
Bis(*n*-butyl)sebacate, 227
1,6-bis[*N*′-(*p*-Chlorophenyl)-*N* ^{5}-biguanido]hexane, 162
N,*N*″-bis(4-chlorophenyl)-3,12-diimino-2,4,11,13-tetraazatetradecanediimidamide, 162

2,6-bis(1,1-dimethylethyl)-4-methylphenol, 75
Bis(2-ethylhexyl) phthalate, 226
Bis(2-ethylhexyl) sodium sulfosuccinate, 244
1,4-Bis(2-ethylhexyl) sulfosuccinate, calcium salt, 246
1,3-bis(β-ethylhexyl)-5-methyl-5-aminohexahydropyrimidine, 304
1,3-bis(2-Ethylhexyl)-5-methylhexahydro-5-pyrimidinamine, 304
1,3-bis(2-ethylhexyl)-5-methylhexahydropyrimidin-5-ylamine, 304
Bis(hydroxyethyl)amine, 228
Bismuth nitrate, and glycerin, 285
Bisodium carbonate, 635
2,3-bis[[(*Z*)-octadec-9-enoyl]oxy]propyl (*Z*)-octadec-9-enoate, 757
Bitrex, 217
Bitter almond oil, 29
Bitterguard, 217
Bittering agents, sucrose octaacetate, 707
BKC, 56
Black magnetic oxide, 340
Black oxide, precipitated, 340
Black rouge, 340
Blanose, 118
Bleached wax, 779
Blonde, 616
Blood sugar, 222
Boletic acid, 276
Bolus alba, 352
Boracic acid, 68
Boraic acid, 68
Borax, 633
  fused, 634
Borax decahydrate, 633
Borax glass, 634
Boric acid, **68**, 285, 634
Boric acid disodium salt, 633
Borofax, 68
Boron trihydroxide, 68
Bourbonal, 261
Bovine serum albumin, 16
Bovine spongiform encephalopathy (BSE), 180, 280
Brazil wax, 772
Brij, 536
Brij 72, 537
Brij 97, 537
British gum, 220
Bromat, 152
Bromocet, 158
2-Bromo-2-nitro-1,3-propanediol, 70
β-bromo-β-nitrotrimethyleneglycol, 70
Bronopol, **70**
  synergists, 247
Brookite, 743
Brookite titanium dioxide, 741
Brown acetate, 82
Brucine, 217
BSE *see* Bovine Spongiform Encephalopathy
Buffering agents
  adipic acid, 11
  ammonia solution, 39
  boric acid, 68
  calcium carbonate, 86
  calcium hydroxide, 91
  calcium lactate, 92
  calcium phosphate, tribasic, 99
  citric acid monohydrate, 181
  dibasic sodium phosphate, 656
  diethanolamine, 228
  glycine, 295
  maleic Acid, 410
  malic acid, 411
  methionine, 436
  monobasic sodium phosphate, 659
  monoethanolamine, 450
  monosodium glutamate, 452
  phosphoric acid, 503
  potassium citrate, 574
  sodium acetate, 620
  sodium bicarbonate, 630
  sodium borate, 633
  sodium carbonate, 635
  sodium citrate dihydrate, 640
  sodium hydroxide, 648
  sodium lactate, 650
  triethanolamine, 754
Bulking agents
  cellulose, powdered, 136
  glycine, 295
  mannitol, 425
  see also Diluents (tablet/capsule)
Bulls Eye Shellac, 616
Buminate, 14
Butane, 306
Butane 1,2,3,4-tetrol, 251
1,4-butanedicarboxylic acid, 11
1,3-Butanediol, 77
Butane-1,3-diol; 1,3-butylene glycol, 77
(2*R*,3*S*)-Butane 1,2,3,4-tetrol, 251
1,2,3,4-butanetetrol, 251
Butenedioic acid, 276
2-Butenedioic acid, 667
(E)-2-Butenedioic acid, 276
(*Z*)-2-butenedioic acid, 410
(2-butenylidene) acetic acid, 672
Butyl ester of poly(methylvinyl ether-co-maleic anhydride), 534
Butyl Hydroxybenzoate, 78
Butyl α-hydroxypropionate, 257
n-Butyl lactate, 257
Butyl Parahydroxybenzoate, 78
Butyl phthalate, 225
Butyl sebacate, 227
Butylated hydroxyanisole, **73**, 76, 587
  and ethyl oleate, 259
Butylated hydroxytoluene, 74–75, 379, 382, 412, 587
  and hydrous lanolin, 380
Butylene glycol, **77**
Butylhydroxyanisole, 73
Butylhydroxyanisolum, 73
Butyl-4-hydroxybenzoate, 78
Butyl-4-hydroxybenzoate sodium salt, 80
Butylhydroxytoluene, 75
Butylhydroxytoluenum, 75
Butylis parahydroxybenzoas, 78
Butylparaben, **78**, 272, 444, 598, 600
  and methylcellulose, 440
  see also Parabens
Butylparaben sodium, 80
γ-butyrolactam, 600
Byco, 278
BZT, 59

C-97, 43
C-1297, 383
CA33, 83
Cab-O-Sil, 185
Cab-O-Sil M-5P, 185–186
Cachalot, 155, 700
Caffeine, 760
Calc algin, 83
Cal-Carb 4450 PG, 88
Cal-Carb 4457, 88
Cal-Carb 4462, 88
Calchem H-102, 109
Calchem IVO-114, 682
Calcii acetas, 82
Calcii carbonas, 86
Calcii chloridum dihydricum, 89
Calcii chloridum hexahydricum, 89
Calcii hydrogenophosphas anhydricus, 94
Calcii hydrogenophosphas dihydricus, 96
Calcii hydroxidum, 91
Calcii lactas pentahydricus, 92
Calcii stearas, 103
Calcii sulfas dihydricus, 105
Calcii sulfas hemihydricus, 107
Calcinated magnesite, 400
Calcined gypsum, 107
Calcined magnesia, 400
Calcined soda, 635
Calcitonin, 647
Calcium acetate, **82**
Calcium acetate monohydrate, 83
Calcium alginate, 21, 41, 83, 567, 624
Calcium and sodium salts of poly(methylvinyl ether-co-maleic anhydride), 534
Calcium ascorbate, 626
Calcium bis(2-hydroxypropanoate) pentahydrate, 92
Calcium carbonate, **86**
  precipitated, 86
Calcium carbonate (1 : 1), 86
Calcium carboxymethylcellulose, 117
Calcium cellulose glycolate, 117
Calcium chloride, **89**
Calcium chloride anhydrous, 89
Calcium Chloride Dihydrate, 89
Calcium Chloride Hexahydrate, 89
Calcium Chloride Hydrate, 89
Calcium cyclamate, 644
Calcium diacetate, 82
Calcium dilactate, 92
Calcium diorthosilicate, 102
Calcium dipropionate, 662
Calcium disodium edetate, 248
Calcium disodium ethylenediaminetetraacetate, 248
Calcium disodium (ethylenedinitrilo)tetraacetate, 248
Calcium distearate, 103
Calcium DTPA, 481
Calcium hydrate, 91
Calcium hydrogen orthophosphate dihydrate, 96
Calcium Hydrogen Phosphate, 96
Calcium Hydrogen Phosphate, Anhydrous, 94
Calcium Hydrogen Phosphate Dihydrate, 96
Calcium hydrosilicate, 101
Calcium hydroxide, **91**
Calcium hydroxide phosphate, 99
Calcium lactate, **92**
Calcium lactate (1:2) hydrate, 92
Calcium lactate (1:2) pentahydrate, 92
Calcium lactate anhydrous, 92
Calcium Lactate Hydrate, 92
Calcium lactate monohydrate and trihydrate, 92
Calcium Lactate Pentahydrate, 92
Calcium metasilicate, 101
Calcium monohydrogen phosphate, 94
Calcium monohydrogen phosphate dihydrate, 96
Calcium monosilicate, 101
Calcium *N*-cyclohexylsulfamate dihydrate, 644
Calcium octadecanoate, 103
Calcium orthophosphate, 94, 99
Calcium pentetate, 481
Calcium Phosphate, 99
  dibasic anhydrous, 98, 101, 107
  dibasic dihydrate, 96, 101, 107
  precipitated, 99
  secondary, 94, 96
  tertiary, 99
  tribasic, 96, 98, 107

Calcium phosphate, dibasic anhydrous, **94**
Calcium phosphate, dibasic dihydrate, **96**
Calcium phosphate, tribasic, **99**
Calcium polycarbophil, 511
Calcium polymannuronate, 83
Calcium polysilicate, 101
Calcium propionate, 662
Calcium (2R)-, (2S)- and (2RS)-2-hydroxypropanoates pentahydrates, 92
Calcium salt, silicic acid, 101
Calcium silicate, **101**, 409
Calcium sorbate, 674
Calcium stearate, **103**, 405, 427, 699, 794
Calcium sulfate, 96, 105
  anhydrous, 105
  dihydrate, 105
  dried, 107
  exsiccated, 107
  hemihydrate, 105, 107
  native, 105
  precipitated, 105
Calcium sulfate dihydrate, 105
Calcium sulfate hemihydrate, **107**
Calcium Sulphate Dihydrate, 105
Calcium trisilicate, 102
Calcium trisodium DTPA, 481
Calcium trisodium pentetate, 481
Calcium/sodium salt mix, of poly(methylvinyl ether/maleic anhydride), 534
Calginate, 83
C16-alkylpyridinium chloride, 157
Caloreen, 220, 222
Calstar, 98
Cal-Tab, 105
Canary dextrin, 220
Canbra oil, 108
Canderel, 48
Candex, 218
Cane sugar, 703
Canola oil, 30, 108, 185, 200, 203, 477, 611, 615, 684
  erucic acid content, 108
  oleic acid content, 109
  tocopherol content, 109
CAP, 143
'Cap locking' preventatives
  fructose, 273
  hydroxypropyl cellulose, low-substituted, 323
  sorbitol, 679
  xylitol, 786
Capmul GMO, 288
Capmul GMS-50, 290
Capric acid, 384
Caprinic acid, 384
Caprylic acid, 1,2,3-propanetriyl ester, 751
Caprylic acid triglyceride, 751
Caprylic/capric triglyceride, 429
Caprylocaproyl Macrogolglycerides, 557
Caprylocaproyl Polyoxylglycerides, 557
Caprynic acid, 384
CapsuLac, 364
Capsule/tablet diluents *see* Diluents (tablet/capsule)
Capsule/tablet disintegrants *see* Disintegrants (tablet/capsule)
Capsule/tablet lubricants *see* Lubricants (tablet/capsule)
Captex 300, 429
Captex 355, 429
Captex 500, 748
Captex 8000, 751–752
Captex GTO, 757
Captisol, 714
Caramania gum (hog gum), 745
Caranda wax, 772
Carbolic acid, 485
Carbomer, **110**, 511
Carbomera, 110
Carbomers, 110
Carbon dioxide, **115**, 462, 464
Carbon dioxide *see also* Gas-forming agents
Carbon dioxide-free water, 769
Carbonate magnesium, 397
Carbonei dioxidum, 115
Carbonic acid, 590
  magnesium salt, mixture with magnesium hydroxide and magnesium hydrate, 399
Carbonic acid calcium salt (1 : 1), 86
Carbonic acid disodium salt, 635
Carbonic acid gas, 115
Carbonic acid, magnesium salt (1:1), 397
Carbonic acid, magnesium salt (1 : 1), hydrate, 399
Carbonic acid, magnesium salt (1 : 1), mixture with magnesium hydroxide and magnesium hydrate, 399
Carbonic acid, magnesium salt anhydrous (1 : 1), 399
Carbonic acid monopotassium salt, 570
Carbonic acid monosodium salt, 629
Carbonic anhydride, 115
Carbopol, 110
Carbopol 940, 110
Carbopol 941, 110
Carbopol 971P, 113
Carbopol 971P NF, 110
Carbopol 974P NF, 110
Carbopol ETD, 112
Carbopol Ultrez, 112
Carbose D, 118
Carbowax, 517
Carbowax Sentry, 517
Carboxy polymethylene, 110
Carboxybenzene, 61
Carboxyethane, 586
Carboxylic acid C, 384
Carboxymethyl cellulose, 332
Carboxymethyl starch, sodium salt, 663
Carboxymethylamylum natricum, 663
Carboxymethylcellulose, 789
Carboxymethylcellulose calcium, **117**, 121, 207
Carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 118, 135, 207
  and microcrystalline cellulose, 132
  and microcrystalline cellulose, mixture, 134
  crosslinked, 206
[[(carboxymethyl)imino]bis(ethylenenitrilo)] tetraacetic acid, 480
[(*o*-Carboxyphenyl)thio]ethylmercury sodium salt, 736
Carboxyvinyl polymer, 110
Cargill Dry, 418
Caridex, 222
Carmellose Calcium, 117
Carmellose Sodium, 118
Carmellosum calcium, 117
Carmellosum natricum, 118
Carmellosum natricum conexum, 206
Carnallite, 573
Carnauba wax, 772
Carob, extract of, 147
Carob bean gum, 146
Carob flour, 146
Carob gum, 146
β-Carotene, 193
Carrageenan, **122**
  and microcrystalline cellulose, 132
Carrisorb, 393
Carthami oleum raffinatum, 610
Cassava (tapioca) starch, 685, 690
Castor oil, **126**, 129, 185
  hydrogenated, 127–128, 185, 763
  hydrogenated polyoxyl, 542
  polyoxyethylene derivatives, 542
  polyoxyl, 542
  polyoxyl 35, 542
  polyoxyl 40 hydrogenated, 542–543
Castor oil, hydrogenated, **128**
Castor Oil, Virgin, 126
Castorwax, 128
Castorwax MP 70, 128
Castorwax MP 80, 128
Cathkinite, 612
Cationic emulsifying wax, **778**
Cationic emulsifying wax *see* Emulsifying wax cationic
Cationic surfactants *see* Surfactants, cationic
Caustic potash, 576
Caustic soda, 648
Cavamax W6 Pharma, 210
Cavamax W7 Pharma, 210
Cavamax W8 Pharma, 210
Cavasol W7, 315
Cavasol W7 HP, 316
Cavasol W7 HP Pharma, 316
Cavitron, 210
CCal-97, 626
*C*Dry MD*, 418
Cecavon, 793
Ceftazidime, 493
Cefuroxime, 493
Celex, 129
Cellacefate, 143
Cellacephate, 143
Cellacol, 438
Cellactose 80, 374
Cellets, 129
Cellosize HEC, 311
Celluflex DBP, 225
Cellulose, 129, 136
  crystalline, 129
  dispersible, 134
  hydroxyethyl, 311
  hydroxyethylmethyl, 314
  microcrystalline, 135, 138, 140, 332, 372
    and carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 132
    and carrageenan, 132
    and guar gum, 132
  powdered, 132, 136, 375
  silicified, microcrystalline, 132
Cellulose acetate, **141**, 145, 236, 332
  solvents, diethyl phthalate, 230
Cellulose acetate benzene-1,2-dicarboxylate, 143
Cellulose acetate hydrogen 1,2-benzenedicarboxylate, 143
Cellulose acetate hydrogen phthalate, 143
Cellulose acetate monophthalate, 143
Cellulose acetate phthalate, 143, 332, 336, 562–563
Cellulose acetate phthalate (CAP), compatible plasticizers, 144
Cellulose acetate-butyrate, 236
Cellulose acetophthalate, 143
Cellulose acetylphthalate, 143
Cellulose, carboxymethyl ether, calcium salt, 117
Cellulose, carboxymethyl ether, sodium salt, 118
Cellulose, carboxymethyl ether, sodium salt, crosslinked, 206
Cellulose diacetate, 141
Cellulose ethyl ether, 262
Cellulose gel, 129
Cellulose gum, 118
  modified, 206
Cellulose, hydrogen 1,2-benzenedicarboxylate, 2-hydroxypropyl methyl ether, 333
Cellulose hydroxyethyl ether, 311

Cellulose, 2-hydroxyethyl methyl ester, 314
Cellulose hydroxyethylate, 311
Cellulose, hydroxypropyl ether, 317, 322
Cellulose, 2-hydroxypropyl ether (low-substituted), 322
Cellulose hydroxypropyl methyl ether, 326
Cellulose, 2-hydroxypropyl methyl ether, acetate succinate, 330
Cellulose, 2-hydroxypropylmethyl ether, acetate hydrogen butanedioate, 330
Cellulose methyl ether, 438
Cellulose, microcrystalline, **129**
Cellulose, microcrystalline and carboxymethylcellulose sodium, **134**
Cellulose phthalate hydroxypropyl methyl ether, 333
Cellulose, powdered, **136**
Cellulose, silicified microcrystalline, **139**
Cellulose triacetate, 141
Cellulosi acetas, 141
Cellulosi acetas phthalas, 143
Cellulosi pulvis, 136
Cellulosum microcristallinum et carmellosum natricum, 134
Cel-O-Brandt, 118
Celphere, 129, 132
Celvol, 564
Cenzias de soda, 635
Ceolus KG, 129
Cepacol, 157
Cepacol chloride, 157
Cephradine, 399
Cera alba, 779
Cera carnauba, 772
Cera cetyla, 774
Cera flava, 780
Cera lanae, 378
Cera mineralis alba, 148
Ceratonia, 2, 146, 784
Ceratonia extract, 147
Ceratonia gum, 146
Ceratonia siliqua, 146
Ceratonia siliqua extract, 147
Ceratonia siliqua gum, 146
Ceresin, **148**
Ceresin wax, 148
Ceresine, 148
Ceresine wax, 148
C*Eridex, 251
Cerin, 148
Cerosin, 148
CertiSeal FC 300A, 616
Cetab, 152
Cetamiun, 157
Cetanol, 155
Cetapharm, 158
Cetasol, 158
Cetavlon, 152
Cetearyl alcohol, 150
Ceteth-N, 536
Cethylose, 118
Cetomacrogol 1000, 536
Cetomacrogol emulsifying ointment BP, 777
Cetostearyl alcohol, **150**, 156, 653, 701, 771, 778
polyoxyethylene alkyl ethers, 548
Cetostearyl Alcohol (Type A), Emulsifying, 770
Cetostearyl Alcohol (Type B), Emulsifying, 770
Cetraol, 152
Cetrimide, 58–60, 152, 164
synergists, 247
Cetrimide BP 1953, 153
Cetrimide BP 1953, 153
Cetrimide emulsifying wax, 778
Cetrimidum, 152
Cetrimonium bromide, 153
Cetyl alcohol, 151, 155, 653, 701
Cetyl esters wax, 774
Cetyl pyridium chloride, 157
Cetyl stearyl alcohol, 150
Cetylacetic acid, 697
Cetylic acid, 473
Cetylpridinii chloridum, 157
Cetylpyridinium bromide, 158
Cetylpyridinium chloride, **157**
Cetyltrimethylammonium bromide, 153
Cevitamic acid, 43
Ceylon isinglass, 13
CFCs *see* Chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs)
Chalk, precipitated, 86
Chelating agents
antioxidants, 247, 276
citric acid monohydrate, 181
disodium edetate, 242
Edetate calcium disodium, 249
edetic acid, 247
fumaric acid, 276
malic acid, 411
maltol, 422
pentetic acid, 480
sodium edetate, 249
trisodium edetate, 249
Chelation therapy, 249
Cheshire gum, 146
Chewable tablet formulations
mannitol, 424
microcrystalline cellulose and guar gum, 132
xylitol, 786
see also Medicated confectionery bases
China clay, 352
Chinese isinglass, 13
Chinese Restaurant Syndrome, 452–453
Chinese seasoning, 452
Chitin, deacetylated, 159
Chitosan, **159**, 479
Chitosan Hydrochloride, 159
Chitosani hydrochloridum, 159
Chlorbutanol, 166
Chlorbutol, 166
Chloretone, 166
Chlorhexidine, **162**
and surfactants, 164
Chlorhexidine Acetate, 162, 164, 668
Chlorhexidine cream BP, 777
Chlorhexidine Diacetate, 162, 164
Chlorhexidine digluconate, 165
Chlorhexidine Digluconate Solution, 162
Chlorhexidine Dihydrochloride, 162, 165
Chlorhexidine gluconate, 164–165
Chlorhexidine Gluconate Solution, 162
Chlorhexidine Hydrochloride, 162, 164–165
Chlorhexidini acetas, 164
Chlorhexidini diacetas, 162
Chlorhexidini digluconatis, 165
Chlorhexidini digluconatis solutio, 162
Chlorhexidini dihydrochloridum, 162
Chlorhexidini hydrochloridum, 165
Chloride of potash, 572
Chlorobutanol, **166**, 489, 491
Chlorobutanol, Anhydrous, 166
Chlorobutanolum anhydricum, 166
Chlorocresol, **168**, 178, 204
4-chloro-*m*-cresol, 168
Chlorocresolum, 168
1-Chloro-1,1-difluoroethane, 171
Chlorodifluoroethane (HCFC), **171**
Chlorodifluoromethane, 172
with chlorodifluoroethane, 172
4-Chloro-3,5-dimethylphenol, 176
Chlorofluorocarbons (CFC), **173**
Chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), 173, 733
dichlorodifluoromethane, 173–175
essential use status, 175
dichlorotetrafluoroethane, 173–174
essential use exemptions, 175
Montreal Protocol, 175
nomenclature, 175
trichloromonofluoromethane, 173–174
Chlorohydric acid, 308
2-chloro-5-hydroxy-1,3-dimethylbenzene, 176
1-chloro-4-hydroxy-2-methylbenzene, 168
2-chloro-5-hydroxytoluene, 168
2-chloro-5-hydroxy-*m*-xylene, 176
4-chloro-3-methylphenol, 168
Chlorophenoxyethanol, 489
Chloropotassuril, 572
Chloroquine, 478
Chloroquine phosphate, 403, 408
Chloroxylenol, 170, 176
synergists, 247
2-chloro-*m*-xylenol, 176
Chlorphenamine maleate, 780
Chlorpheniramine maleate, 321
Chlorpromazine, 204
Chlorure de sodium, 637
Cholest-5-en-3β-ol, 178
Cholesterin, 178
Cholesterol, **178**, 379, 381, 383
lanolin alcohols, 382
Cholesterolum, 178
Choline, 386
Chondrus extract, 122
CI 77499, 340
Ciclosporin, 238, 259
Cimetidine, 353
Ciprofloxacin, 399
incompatibilities, sodium bicarbonate, 631
Cirashine CS, 148
cis-butenedioic acid, 410
9-*cis*,12-*cis*-linoleic acid, 389
cis,*cis*-9,12-octadecadienoic acid, 389
cis-ethene-1,2-dicarboxylic acid, 410
cis-1,2-ethylenedicarboxylic acid, 410
cis-maleic acid, 410
cis-9-octadecenoic acid, 466
cis-9-octadecen-1-ol, 468
Citation, 447
Citrate of potash, 574
Citric acid, 73, 183, 413, 570
and polydextrose, 514
anhydrous, 183, 630
effervescent tablet formulations, 629
sodium bicarbonate neutralization, 632
Citric acid ethyl ester, 756
Citric Acid Hydrate, 181
Citric acid monohydrate, **181**, 277, 642, 732
Citric acid potassium salt, 574
Citric acid, tributyl ester, 749
Citric acid trisodium salt, 640
Citric acid trisodium salt anhydrous, 642
Citroflex 2, 756
Citroflex 4, 749–750
Citroflex A-2, 10
Citroflex A-4, 8
Citrofol AI, 756
Citrosa, 458
Citrus pectin, 478
Clindamycin, 353
Clinoenstatite, 403
CMC calcium, 117
CMC sodium, 118
Coal tar, 450, 484
Coateric, 563
Coating agents
acetyltriethyl citrate, 10
calcium carbonate, 86
carboxymethylcellulose calcium, 117
carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 119

Coating agents (*cont.*)
carnauba wax, 772
cellulose acetate, 141
cellulose acetate phthalate (CAP), 144
ceresin, 148
cetyl alcohol, 155
chitosan, 159
ethylcellulose, 262
fructose, 273
gelatin, 278
glycerin, 283
glyceryl behenate, 286
glyceryl palmitostearate, 293
hydroxyethyl cellulose, 311
hydroxyethylmethyl cellulose, 314
hydroxypropyl cellulose, 318
hypromellose, 326
hypromellose phthalate, 333
isomalt, 343
latex particles, 145
liquid glucose, 282
maltitol, 414
maltodextrin, 418
methylcellulose, 438
microcrystalline wax, 775
paraffin, 474
poloxamer, 507
polydextrose, 513
polyethylene glycol, 518, 521
polyethylene oxide, 522
poly-DL-(lactic acid), 515
polyvinyl acetate phthalate, 562
polyvinyl alcohol, 564
potassium chloride, model drug, 572
povidone, 581
shellac, 616
shellac with stearic acid, 697
sucrose, 282
surface color agents, 189
titanium oxide, 741, 743
tributyl citrate, 749
triethyl citrate, 756
vanillin, 760
white wax, 779
xylitol, 786
yellow wax, 780
zein, 790
see also Film-forming agents; Lubricants (tablet and capsule)
Coatsome, 499
Cocoa butter, 725
Cocois oleum raffinatum, 184
Coconut butter, 184
Coconut oil, **184**, 431
refined, 184
Coconut oil PEG 1500 esters, hydrogenated, 557
Coconut Oil, Refined, 184
Colamine, 450
Colemanite, 69
Coliquifilm, 166
Colloidal Anhydrous Silica, 185
Colloidal cellulose, 134
Colloidal silica, 185
hydrophobic, 309
Colloidal silicon dioxide, 139–140, 185, 310
Collone HV, 770
Collone NI, 777
Colonic drug delivery
chitosan, 159
guar gum, 298
Color index number 77891, 741
Colorants, coloring agents, 189
Coloring adjuvants, trehalose, 746
Coloring agents, **189**, 743
calcium carbonate, 86
classifications, 189
iron oxides, 340
lakes, 189
see also Pigments
Colza oil, 109
low erucic acid, 108
Colzao CT, 108
Common salt, 637
Compactrol, 105
Complexing agents
calcium acetate, 82
hydroxpropyl betadex, 316
poly(methylvinyl ether/maleic anhydride), 534
sulfobutylether β-cyclodextrin, 714
Compound Thymol Glycerin BP, 739
Compressible starch, 691
Compressible sugar, 706, 709, 712–713
Compressible tablet excipients, lactose
anhydrous, 359
monohydrate and corn starch, 370
spray dried, 376
Compression aids, corn starch and pregelatinized starch, 200
Compressuc, 709
Comprima, 709
Compritol 888 ATO, 286
Concentrated ammonia solution, 39
Concentrated hydrochloric acid, 308
Confectionary glaze, 618
Confectioner's sugar, 706, 710, 713
Confectionery bases, medicated, sucrose, 703
Confectionery bases, medicated *see* Medicated confectionery bases
Contact lenses
benzalkonium chloride, 57
cetrimide, 152
chlorhexidine, 162
chlorobutanol, 167
edetic acid, 247
poloxamers, 507
thimerosal, 736
Controlled-release agents
acetyltributyl citrate, 8
acetyltriethyl citrate, 10
alginic acid, 20, 22
aliphatic polyesters, 23
bentonite, 53, 55
biodegradable polymers, 23
carbomers, 110
carrageenan, 122
cellulose acetate, 141
cellulose acetate phthalate with ethyl cellulose, 144
ceratonia, 146–147
cetyl alcohol, 155
cetyl esters wax, 774
chitosan, 159
dibutyl sebacate, 227
ethylcellulose, 263, 266
glycerin monostearate, 290–291
glyceryl behenate, 286
glyceryl monooleate, 289
glyceryl palmitostearate, 293
guar gum, 298
hydrogenated vegetable oil type I, 762
hydroxpropyl betadex, 316
hydroxypropyl cellulose, 318
hypromellose, 326
hypromellose acetate succinate, 330
isopropyl palmitate, 350
magnesium aluminum silicate, 393
magnesium oxide, 401
methylcellulose, 438
microcrystalline wax, 775–776
paraffin, 474
peanut oil, 476
polacrilin potassium, 505
polycarbophil, 509
polyethylene oxide, 522
poly-DL-(lactic acid), 515
polymethacrylates, 526
potassium chloride, model drug, 572
povidone, 585
sesame oil, 614
shellac, 616
sodium bicarbonate, 630
sodium chloride, 637
starch, 690
stearic acid, 697
stearyl alcohol, 700
talc, 728
tributyl citrate, 749
triethyl citrate, 756
urethane hydrogels, 518
white wax, 779
yellow wax, 780–781
zein, 790
see also Enteric formulations/coating agents; Sustained-release agents
Cooling agents, thymol, 739
Copherol F1300, 31
Copolymer of 1-vinyl-2-pyrrolidone and vinyl acetate in a ratio of 3:2 by mass, 196
Copolymerum methacrylatis butylati basicum, 525
Copolyvidone, 196
Copovidone, **196**, 210
Copovidonum, 196
Copra oil, 184
Cordycepic acid, 424
Corn oil, 30, 109, 185, 199, 203, 477, 589, 611, 615, 684, 722
refined, 199
Corn oil PEG 300 esters, 557
Corn starch, 690, 710
and lactose, monohydrate, mixture, 370
sterilizable, 694–695
Corn starch and pregelatinized starch, **200**
Corn sugar, 222
Corn sugar gum, 782
Corn syrup, 282
Corn syrup solids, 420
Cornmint oil, 434
Corsodyl, 165
CoSept B, 78
CoSept E, 270
CoSept M, 441
CoSept P, 596
Cosolvents *see* Solvents
CoTran, 268–269
CoTran 9702, 269
CoTran 9705, 269
CoTran 9706, 269
CoTran 9715, 269
CoTran 9716, 269
CoTran 9726, 269
CoTran 9728, 269
Cotton oil, 202
Cottonseed oil, 30, 109, 185, 200, 202, 477, 589, 611, 615, 684, 722
hydrogenated, 129, 762
refined, 202
*C*Pharm*, 220
*C*PharmDex*, 222
*C*PharmDry*, 418
*C*PharmGel*, 685, 691
*C*PharmIsoMaltidex*, 342
*C*PharmMaltidex*, 414
*C*PharmMannidex*, 424
*C*PharmSorbidex*, 679
*C*PharmSweet*, 282

Cream bases *see* Ointment bases
Cremao CS-34, 722
Cremao CS-36, 722
Cremophor, 542–543, 548
Cremophor 410, 542
Cremophor A, 536, 548
Cremophor A25, 537
Cremophor CO 40, 542
Cremophor CO 455, 542
Cremophor EL, 542–543
Cremophor ELP, 542, 544
Cremophor RH 40, 542–544
Cremophor RH 410, 542
Cremophore CO 40, 542
Cresol, 170, 203–205
Cresylic acid, 203–205
Cresylol, 203
Creta preparada, 86
Cristal G, 697
Cristal S, 697
Crodacid, 697
Crodacol C70, 155
Crodacol C90, 155
Crodacol C95, 155
Crodacol CS90, 150
Crodacol S95, 700
Crodamol EO, 259
Crodamol GTCC-PN, 429
Crodamol SS, 774
Croderol, 283
Crodex A, 770
Crodex C, 778
Crodex N, 777
Crodolene, 466
Croduret, 128
Croscarmellose sodium, 118, 206
Crospopharm, 208
Crospovidone, 198, 208, 585
Crospovidonum, 208
Crossential 094, 466
Crosslinked carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 206
Crosslinked povidone, 208
Crosslinking agents, calcium lactate, 92
Crotylidene acetic acid, 672
Crude olive-pomace oil, 471
Cryogel, 278
Cryoprotectants
albumin, 15
dimethyl sulfoxide, 238
see also Freeze-drying stabilizers
Crystal Gum, 220, 222
Crystalac, 616
Crystalline cellulose, 129
Crystalline maltose, 423–424
Crystallization modifiers, raffinose, 603
Crystallose, 608
Crystol carbonate, 635
CTAB, 153
Culminal MC, 438
Culminal MHEC, 314
Cumotocopherol, 33
Cutina CP, 774
Cutina GMS, 290
Cutina HR, 128
Cyclamate, 644
Cyclamate sodium, 643
Cyclamic acid, 644
Cyclan, 644
Cyclic methylethylene carbonate, 590
Cyclic oligosaccharide, 210
Cyclic propylene carbonate, 590
Cyclic propylene ester, 590
Cycloamylose, 210
alpha-cycloamylose, 210
beta-cycloamylose, 210
Cyclodextrin, 210–211, 716
β-Cyclodextrin, 2-hydroxypropyl ether, 315
β-Cyclodextrin sulfobutylether, sodium salt, 714
Cyclodextrins, **210**, 316
alpha-cyclodextrin, 210
Cycloglucan, 210
Cyclogol 1000, 536
Cycloheptaamylose, 210
Cycloheptaglucan, 210
Cyclohexaamylose, 210
Cyclohexanesulfamic acid, 644
Cyclohexanesulfamic acid calcium salt, 644
N-cyclohexylsulfamic acid, 644
Cyclohexylsulfamic acid calcium salt, 644
Cyclohexylsulfamic acid monosodium salt, 643
Cyclomaltoheptose, 210
Cyclomaltohexose, 210
Cyclomaltooctaose, 210
Cyclomethicone, **215**, 234, 620
Cyclonette Wax, 770
Cyclooctaamylose, 210
Cyclopolydimethylsiloxane, 215
p-cymen-3-ol, 739
3-*p*-cymenol, 739
Cysteine hydrochloride, 71

Dalpac, 75
DBP, 225
DBS, 227
DEA, 228
Deacetylated chitin, 159
Deacetylchitin, 159
De-aerated water, 769
Deasit PC, 103
Decanedioic acid, dibutyl ester, 227
Decanoic acid, 384
Decoic acid, 384
Decyclic acid, 384
n-decylic acid, 384
DEHP, 226
Dehydrated alcohol, 18–19
Delayed-release agents *see* Colonic drug delivery; Controlled-release agents; Enteric formulations/coating agents
Delta tocopherol, 32–33
see also Tocopherol
Deltan, 238
Demarone, 793
Denatonium benzoate, **217**
Denatured alcohol, 18–19
Denaturing agents
methanol, 19
methyl isobutyl ketone, 19
Dendritic salt, 639
1-Deoxy-1-(ethylamino)-D-glucitol, 432
(2*S*)-7-[[6-O-(6-Deoxy-α-L-mannopyranosyl)-β-D-glucopyranosyl]oxy]-2,3-dihydro-5-hydroxy-2-(3-hydroxy-4-methoxyphenyl)-4*H*-1-benzopyran-4-one, 459
1-[4-[[2-O-(6-Deoxy-α-L-mannopyranosyl)-β-D-glucopyranosyl]oxy]-2,6-dihydroxyphenyl]-3-(3-hydroxy-4-methoxyphenyl)propan-1-one, 458
1-[4-[[2-O-6-deoxy-α-L-mannopyranosyl)-β-D-glycopyranosyl]oxy]-2,6-dihydroxyphenyl]-3-(3-hydroxy-4-methoxyphenyl), 458
1-Deoxy-1-(methylamino)-D-glucitol, 431
DEP, 230
Dervacid, 697
Descote, 400
Desiccants, calcium sulfate, anhydrous, 105
Dessicants, calcium chloride, 89
Destab, 86, 105, 397
Detergents
polyethylene alkyl ethers, 537
sodium lauryl sulfate, 651
see also Surfactants; Wetting agents
Dextrates, **218**, 222, 224, 420
Dextrimaltose, 222
Dextrin, **220**, 224, 282, 420, 690
alpha-dextrin, 210
beta-dextrin, 210
see also Cyclodextrins
Dextrinum, 220
Dextrinum album, 220
Dextrofin, 222
Dextrose, 219, 222, 275, 282, 514
anhydrous, 224–225
invert sugar, 706
monohydrate, 225
sweetness *vs.* fructose, 273
see also Polydextrose
Dextrose anhydrous, **224**
Dextrose equivalent (DE) values, definition, 420
Dextrose solutions, 225
1,2-Diacyl-*sn*-glycero-3-phosphocholine, 385
Diagnostic aids, inulin, 339
Dialuminum dipotassium sulfate, 567
Diazepam, 396, 398
Diazolidinyl urea, 338
Dibasic anhydrous calcium phosphate, 94
Dibasic calcium phosphate, 94
Dibasic Calcium Phosphate Dihydrate, 96
Dibasic Calcium Phosphate Hydrate, 96
Dibasic dihydrate calcium phosphate, 96
Dibasic magnesium stearate, 404
Dibasic potassium phosphate, 658
Dibasic sodium phosphate, 656, 660
Dibasic sodium phosphate dihydrate, 656
Dibasic sodium phosphate dodecahydrate, 656
Dibasic sodium phosphate heptahydrate, 656
Dibasic sodium phosphate hydrate, 656
Dibasic sodium phosphate monohydrate, 656
Dibasic zinc stearate, 793
Dibutyl benzene 1,2-dicarboxylate, 225
Dibutyl 1,2-benzenedicarboxylate, 225
Dibutyl decanedioate, 227
Dibutyl ester, decanedioic acid, 227
Dibutyl ester of 1,2-benzenedicarboxylic acid, 225
Dibutyl 1,8-octanedicarboxylate, 227
Dibutyl phthalate, **225**, 231, 237
Dibutyl sebacate, **227**
Dibutylated hydroxytoluene, 75
2,6-di-*tert*-butyl-*p*-cresol, 75
3,5-di-*tert*-butyl-4-hydroxytoluene, 75
Dibutylis phthalas, 225
2,6-Di-*tert*-butyl-4-methylphenol, 75
Dibutyl-*o*-phthalate, 225
Di-Cafos, 96, 98
Di-Cafos AN, 94, 96
Dicalcium orthophosphate, 94, 96
Dicalcium silicate, 102
Dicarbomethoxy zinc, 791
1,6-Dichloro-1,6-dideoxy-β-D-fructofuranosyl-4-chloro-4-deoxy-α-D-galactopyranoside, 701
Dichlorodifluoromethane, 173–175, 304, 734
essential use status, 175
Montreal Protocol, 175
1,6-di(4′-chlorophenyldiguanido)hexane, 162
Dichlorotetrafluoroethane, 173–174, 304, 734
Montreal Protocol, 175
1,2-Dichloro-1,1,2,2-tetrafluoroethane, 173
Diclofenac, 238
D-2,3-didehydro-*erythro*-hexono-1,4-lactone, 250
2,3-didehydro-L-*threo*-hexono-1,4-lactone, 43
Dietary supplements
calcium phosphate, tribasic, 99
glycine, 295

Dietary supplements (*cont.*)
linoleic acid, 389
Diethanolamine, **228**, 451, 755
Diethyl benzene-1,2-dicarboxylate, 230
Diethyl phthalate, 226, 230, 237, 562
Diethylene glycol monopalmitostearate, 268
Diethylene glycol palmitostearate, 268
Diethyleneglycoli monopalmitostearas, 268
Diethylenetriamine pentaacetic acid, 480
Diethylenetriamine-*N*,*N*,*N*′,*N*′,*N*″-pentaacetic acid, 480
(diethylenetrinitrilo)pentaacetic acid, 480
Di(2-ethyl-hexyl)phthalate, 226
Diethylis phthalas, 230
Diethylolamine, 228
1,1-Difluoro-1-chloroethane, 171
Difluorochloromethane, 172
Difluoroethane, 303, 734
with chlorodifluoroethane, 172
1,1-Difluoroethane, 232
Difluoroethane (HFC), **232**
Digoxin, 353
(±)-3,4-Dihydro-2,8-dimethyl-2-(4,8,12-trimethyltridecyl)-2*H*-1-benzopyran-6-ol, 33
(Dihydrogen borato)phenylmercury, 494
1,2-dihydro-2-ketobenzisosulfonazole, 605
2,3-dihydro-3-oxobenzisosulfonazole, 605
2-(1,3-Dihydro-3-oxo-5-sulfo-2*H*-indol-2-ylidene)-2,3-dihydro-3-oxo-1*H*-indole-5-sulfonic acid disodium salt, 193
4,5-Dihydro-5-oxo-1-(4-sulfophenyl)-4-[(4-sulfophenyl)azo]-1*H*-pyrazole-3-carboxylic acid trisodium salt, 195
9,10-dihydro-3,5,6,8-tetrahydroxy-7-[2-hydroxy-5-(2-hydroxyethyl)phenyl]-9,10-dioxo-1,2-anthracenedicarboxylic acid, 618
(±)-3,4-dihydro-2,5,7,8-tetramethyl-2-(4,8,12-trimethyltridecyl)-2*H*-1-benzopyran-6-ol, 31
(±)-3,4-Dihydro-2,5,7,8-tetramethyl-2-(4,8,12-trimethyltridecyl)-2*H*-1-benzopyran-6-ol acetate, 32
(±)-3,4-dihydro-2,5,8-trimethyl-2-(4,8,12-trimethyltridecyl)-2*H*-1-β-benzopyran-6-ol, 33
Dihydroxyaluminum monostearate, 35
1,3-dihydroxybutane, 77
(2*R*,3*R*)-2,3-dihydroxybutane-1,4-dioic acid, 731
L-(+)-2,3-dihydroxybutanedioic acid, 731
[*R*-(*R**,*R**)]-2,3-Dihydroxybutanedioic acid, 731
2,2′-dihydroxydiethylamine, 228
3,5-dihydroxy-4-(3-hydroxy-4-methoxyhydrocinnamoyl)phenyl-2-*O*-(6-deoxy-α-L-mannopyranosyl)-β-D-glucopyranoside, 458
3,5-dihydroxy-4-[3-(3-hydroxy-4-methoxyphenyl)propionyl]phenyl-2-*O*-(6-deoxy-α-L-mannopyranosyl)-β-D-glucopyranoside, 458
1,2-Dihydroxypropane, 592
2,3-dihydroxypropyl docosanoate, 286
2,3-dihydroxypropyl octadecanoate, 290
2,3-dihydroxysuccinic acid, 731
Diiron trioxide, 340
Diisobutylphenoxyethoxyethyl dimethyl benzyl ammonium chloride, 59
Diluent (tablet/capsule)
lactose, monohydrate and povidone, 373
lactose, monohydrate and powdered cellulose, 374
Diluents (dry powder inhalers)
inhalation lactose, 362
lactose, 364
mannitol, 424
Diluents (liquids)
maltitol, 414
sunflower oil, 721
Diluents (medicated powders), starch, sterilizable maize, 695–696
Diluents (tablet/capsule)
ammonium alginate, 41
calcium carbonate, 86, 88
calcium lactate, 92
calcium phosphate
dibasic anhydrous, 94
dibasic dihydrate, 96
tribasic, 99
calcium silicate, 101
calcium sulfate, 105
cellulose
powdered, 136
silicified microcrystalline, 139
cellulose acetate, 141
compressible sugar, 709
confectioner's sugar, 710
corn starch and pregelatinized starch, 200
dextrates, 218
dextrin, 220
dextrose, 222
erythritol, 251
ethylcellulose, 262
fructose, 273
fumaric acid, 276
glyceryl palmitostearate, 293
inhalation lactose, 362
isomalt, 343
kaolin, 352
lactitol, 357
lactose, 364
anhydrous, 359
monohydrate and corn starch, 370
monohydrate and microcrystalline cellulose, 371
spray dried, 376
magnesium carbonate, 397
magnesium oxide, 400
maltodextrin, 418
maltose, 422
mannitol, 424
medium-chain triglycerides, 429
microcrystalline cellulose, 129
polydextrose, 513
polymethacrylates, 526
simethicone, 619
sodium alginate, 622
sodium chloride, 637, 639
sorbitol, 679
starch, 685
pregelatinized, 691
sterilizable maize, 695–696
sucrose, 703
sugar spheres, 712
sulfobutylether β-cyclodextrin, 714
talc, 728
tragacanth, 744
trehalose, 746
xylitol, 786
Dilute acetic acid, 6
Dilute alcohol, 18–19
Dilute ammonia solution, 40
Dilute ethanol, 19
Dilute hydrochloric acid, 309
Dilute phosphoric acid, 504
Dilute sulfuric acid, 720
Diluted glycerin solutions, 285
Diluted hydrochloric acid, 309
Diluted phosphoric acid, 504
Dimethicone, 216, 233, 620
Dimethyl 1,2-benzenedicarboxylate, 236
Dimethyl benzeneorthodicarboxylate, 236
Dimethyl carbinol, 346
Dimethyl ether, **235**, 307
Dimethyl ketone, 7
Dimethyl oxide, 235
Dimethyl phthalate, 226, 231, 236
Dimethyl sulfoxide, **238**
Dimethyl sulphoxide, 238
Dimethylacetamide, **241**
Dimethylacetamidum, 241
Dimethylacetone amide, 241
Dimethylamide acetate, 241
3-(3,3-Dimethylbutylamino)-*N*-(α-carboxyphenethyl)succinamic acid methyl ester, 460
(3*R*)-3-(3,3-Dimethylbutylamino)-4-[[(2*R*)-1-methoxy-1-oxo-3-phenylpropan-2-yl]amino]-4-oxobutanoic acid, 460
N-[*N*-(3,3-dimethylbutyl)-L-α-aspartyl]-L-phenylalanine 1-methyl ester, 460
3,5-dimethyl-4-chlorophenol, 176
Dimethyl-β-cyclodextrin, 213, 716
Dimethylcyclopolysiloxane, 215
1,1-dimethylethyl-4-methoxyphenol, 73
Dimethylformaldehyde, 7
Dimethylis sulfoxidum, 238
Dimethylmethane, 306
N-[2-(2,6-dimethylphenyl)amino]-2-oxoethyl]-*N*,*N*-diethylbenzenemethanaminium benzoate monohydrate, 217
Dimethylpolysiloxane, 233
Dimethylsilicone fluid, 233
Dimethylsiloxane, 233
N,*N*-Dimethyl-*N*-[2-[2-[4-(1,1,3,3-tetramethylbutyl)phenoxy]ethoxy]ethyl] benzene-methanaminium chloride, 59
5,8-dimethyltocol, 33
Dimeticone, 233
Dimeticonum, 233
Dimexide, 238
Dinatrii edetas, 242
Dinatrii phosphas anhydricus, 656
Dinatrii phosphas dihydricus, 656
Dinatrii phosphas dodecahydricus, 656
Dinitrogen monoxide, 463
Dinitrogen oxide, 463
Dinitrogenii oxidum, 463
1,3-Di(octanoyloxy)propan-2-yl octanoate, 751
Dioctyl calcium sulfosuccinate, 246
Dioctyl phthalate, 226
Dioctyl potassium sulfosuccinate, 246
Dioctyl sodium sulfosuccinate, 244
Diolamine, 228
Dioxotitanium, 741
Di-Pac, 709
Dipotassium dichloride, 572
Dipotassium edathamil, 248
Dipotassium edetate, 248
Dipotassium ethylenediaminetetraacetate, 248
Dipotassium hydrogen orthophosphate, 658
Dipotassium hydrogen phosphate, 658
Dipotassium phosphate, 658
Dipotassium pyrosulfite, 577
Dipotassium salt, 577
Direct compacting sucrose, 709
Directly compressible sucrose, 709
Disinfectants
alcohol, 17
benzalkonium chloride, 56
benzethonium chloride, 59
benzyl alcohol, 64
cetrimide, 152
cetylpyridinium chloride, 157
chlorhexidine, 162
chlorocresol, 168

chloroxylenol, 176
cresol, 203–204
isopropyl alcohol, 346
phenol, 485
phenoxyethanol, 488
phosphoric acid, 504
potassium metabisulfite, 577
povidone-iodine, 585
propylene glycol, 592
sodium borate, 633
sodium hydroxide, 649
thymol, 739
see also Antibacterial agents
Disintegrants
hydroxypropyl starch, 325
lactose, monohydrate and corn starch, 370
Disintegrants (tablet/capsule)
alginic acid, 20
calcium alginate, 83
carboxymethylcellulose calcium, 117
carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 119
cellulose, powdered, 136, 138
chitosan, 159
colloidal silicon dioxide, 185–186
corn starch and pregelatinized starch, 200
croscarmellose sodium, 206
crospovidone, 208
docusate sodium, 244
glycine, 295
guar gum, 298
hydroxypropyl cellulose, 318
low-substituted, 322
magnesium aluminum silicate, 393
methylcellulose, 438
microcrystalline cellulose, 129
polacrilin potassium, 504
povidone, 581
sodium alginate, 622
sodium starch glycolate, 663
starch, 685
pregelatinized, 691
Disodium carbonate, 635
Disodium disulfite, 654
Disodium edetate, **242**, 247–248
Disodium Edetate Hydrate, 242
Disodium EDTA, 242
Disodium ethylenediaminetetraacetate, 242
Disodium ethylenediaminetetraacetate dihydrate, 242
Disodium hydrogen citrate, 640
Disodium hydrogen phosphate, 656
anhydrous, 656
Disodium Hydrogen Phosphate Dihydrate, 656
Disodium Hydrogen Phosphate Dodecahydrate, 656
Disodium 5,5′-indigotin disulfonate, 193
Disodium phosphate, 656
Disodium Phosphate, Anhydrous, 656
Disodium Phosphate Dihydrate, 656
Disodium Phosphate Dodecahydrate, 656
Disodium pyrosulfite, 654
Disodium sulfite, 669
Disodium tetraborate anhydrous, 634
Disodium tetraborate decahydrate, 633
Disodium thiosulfate, 671
Disodium thiosulfate pentahydrate, 671
Dispersing agents
aluminum oxide, 37
cellulose, microcrystalline and carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 134
diethanolamine, 228
ethylene glycol palmitostearate, 267
glycerin monostearate, 290
hypromellose, 326
hypromellose acetate succinate, 330
lecithin, 385
phospholipids, 499
poloxamers, 507–508
polyethylene alkyl ethers, 537
poly(methylvinyl ether/maleic anhydride), 534
polyoxyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters, 550
sorbitan esters, 675
Dissolution enhancer, macrogol 15 hydroxystearate, 391
Dissolution enhancers
calcium carbonate, 86
crospovidone, 208, 210
cyclodextrins, 211
fructose, 273
hydroxpropyl betadex, 316
hypromellose, 326
oleyl alcohol, 468
polyoxylglycerides, 558
povidone, 581
see also Solubilizing agents
Dissolution-enhancing agents, sulfobutylether β-cyclodextrin, 714
Dissolvine, 247
Distilled water, 769
Disulfurous acid, 577
Disulfurous acid, disodium salt, 654
DI-TAB, 96, 98
DL-Dilactide homopolymer, 515
DL-dilactide polymer, 515
DL-3,6-dimethyl-1,4-dioxane-2,5-dione homopolymer, 515
DL-*erythro*-9,10,16,-Trihydroxyhexadecanoic acid, 618
DL-PLA, 515
DMA, 241
DMAC, 241
DM-β-CD, 213
DME, 235
DMP, 236
DMSO, 238
Dobendan, 157
Docosanoic acid, diester with glycerin, 286
Docosanoic acid, 2,3-dihydroxypropyl ester, 286
Docosanoic acid, monoester with glycerin, 286
Docosanoic acid, triester with glycerin, 286
Docusate calcium, 246
Docusate potassium, 246
Docusate sodium, **244**
Dodecanoic acid, 383
Dodecoic acid, 383
Dodecyl alcohol hydrogen sulfate, sodium salt, 651
Dodecyl gallate, 589
Dodecyl sodium sulfate, 651
Dodecyl 3,4,5-trihydroxybenzoate, 589
Dodecylis gallas, 589
Dodecylsulfate sodium salt, 651
Dodecyltrimethylammonium bromide, 153
Dolomite, 398
DOP, 226
Double-dressed, white maize starch, 695
Dow Corning 245 Fluid, 215
Dow Corning 246 Fluid, 215
Dow Corning 345 Fluid, 215
Dow Corning Q7-2243 LVA, 619
Dow Corning Q7-2587, 619
Dow Corning Q7-9120, 233
Dowanol EPh, 488
Dracylic acid, 61
Drakeol, 445
Dried calcium sulfate, 107
Dried gypsum, 107
Dried Sodium Carbonate, 635
Drierite, 105
Dry ice, 115
DSS, 244
DTAB, 153
DTPA, 480
DTPAN, 481
Duodecylic acid, 383
Dusting powders
absorbable, 695
chlorhexidine salts, 162
starch-derivative, 695
talc, 728
zinc stearate, 793
Dygminu aliejus, rafinuotas, 610
Dymel, 173
Dymel 134a/P, 733
Dymel 142b, 171
Dymel 152a, 232
Dymel 227 ea/P, 303
Dymel A, 235
Dypingite, 399
Dyriel 22, 172
Dytol R-52, 456

1*E*-2-[6-[[amino-[[amino-[(4-chlorophenyl) amino]methylidene]amino]methylidene] amino]hexyl]-1-[amino-[(4-chlorophenyl) amino]methylidene]guanidine, 162
Ear wax softeners, 30
Earth wax, 148
Earthnut oil, 476
Eastacryl, 525
Eastacryl 30 D, 526
Eastman DMP, 236
ECG 505, 117
Eco-Lac, 355
Edathamil, 247
Edathamil calcium disodium, 248
Edathamil dipotassium, 248
Edathamil disodium, 242
Edenor, 697
Edenor C14 98-100, 455
Edenor C16 98-100, 473
Edetate calcium disodium, 247–248
Edetate dipotassium, 248
Edetate Disodium, 242
Edetate sodium, 249
Edetate trisodium, 249
Edetic acid, 244, 247
and thimerosal, 737
dipotassium salt, 248
tetrasodium salt, 249
trisodium salt, 249
Edetic acid calcium, disodium salt, 248
Edetic acid calcium disodium salt, 248
Edetic acid dipotassium salt, 248
Edetic acid, disodium salt, 242
Edetic acid tetrasodium salt, 249
Edetic acid trisodium salt, 249
EDTA, 247
EDTA calcium, 248
EDTA dipotassium, 248
EDTA tetrasodium, 249
EDTA trisodium, 249
Effer-Soda, 629
Effervescent tablet formulations
citric acid, anhydrous, 181
citric acid monohydrate, 181
dextrates, 218
fumaric acid, 276
potassium bicarbonate, 570
sodium bicarbonate, 629–630, 636
sodium carbonate, 635
sodium citrate dihydrate, 640
tartaric acid, 731
Egg lecithin, 385

Egg yolk lecithin, 385
Eglumine, 432
Elaic acid, 466
Elaol, 225
Elcema, 136
Elfan 240, 651
Elvanol, 564
Embanox BHT, 75
Embanox tocopherol, 33
Emcocel, 129
Emcompress, 96, 98
Emcompress Anhydrous, 94, 96
EmCon CO, 126
Emdex, 218
Emeressence 1160, 488
Emerest 2316, 350
Emersol, 466, 697
Emersol 140, 473
Emersol 143, 473
Emersol 310, 389
Emersol 315, 389
Emollients
almond oil, 30
aluminum stearate, 35
canola oil, 108
castor oil, 126
ceratonia extract, 147
cetostearyl alcohol, 150
cetyl alcohol, 155
cetyl esters wax, 774
cholesterol, 178
coconut oil, 184
cottonseed oil, 202
cyclomethicone, 215
dibutyl sebacate, 228
dimethicone, 233
ethylene glycol palmitostearate, 267
glycerin, 283
glycerin monostearate, 290
glyceryl monooleate, 289
glyceryl monostearate, 292
isopropyl myristate, 348
isopropyl palmitate, 350
lanolin, 379
lecithin, 385
light mineral oil, 447
medium-chain triglycerides, 429
mineral oil, 445
mineral oil and lanolin alcohols, 449
myristyl alcohol, 456
octyldodecanol, 465
oleyl alcohol, 468
petrolatum, 482
petrolatum and lanolin alcohols, 484
safflower glycerides, 611
safflower oil, 610
soybean oil, 683
stearyl alcohol, 700
sunflower oil, 721–722
tricaprylin, 751
triolein, 757
xylitol, 786
zinc acetate, 791
Empilan KB, 536
Empilan KM, 536
Emprove, 424
Emulgade 1000NI, 777
Emulgen, 536
Emulsifing agents, ammonium alginate, 41
Emulsifying agent, capric acid, 384
Emulsifying agents
acacia, 1
agar, 13
anionic emulsifying wax, 771
calcium alginate, 83
calcium stearate, 103
carbomers, 110
carboxymethylcellulose calcium, 117
carrageenan, 122
cetostearyl alcohol, 150
cetyl alcohol, 155
cholesterol, 178
diethanolamine, 228
ethylene glycol palmitostearate, 267
glycerin monostearate, 290
glyceryl monooleate, 289
hectorite, 301
hydroxypropyl cellulose, 318
hydroxypropyl starch, 325
hypromellose, 326
lanolin, 378
hydrous, 380
lanolin alcohols, 382
lauric acid, 383
lecithin, 385
linoleic acid, 389
medium-chain triglycerides, 429
methylcellulose, 438
mineral oil and lanolin alcohols, 449
monobasic sodium phosphate, 659
monoethanolamine, 450
myristic acid, 455
nonionic emulsifying wax, 777
octyldodecanol, 465
oleic acid, 466
oleyl alcohol, 468
palmitic acid, 473
pectin, 478
phospholipids, 499
poloxamer, 507
poloxamers, 508
polycarbophil, 509
polyoxyethylene alkyl ethers, 536
polyoxyethylene castor oil derivatives, 542
polyoxyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters, 550
polyoxyethylene stearates, 555
polyoxylglycerides, 558
potassium alginate, 566
propylene glycol alginate, 594
safflower glycerides, 611
saponite, 612
self-emulsifying glyceryl monostearate, 292
sodium borate, 633
sodium citrate dihydrate, 640
sodium lactate, 650
sodium lauryl sulfate, 651
sorbitan esters, 675
stearic acid, 697
sunflower oil, 721
tragacanth, 744
triethanolamine, 754
vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate, 764
xanthan gum, 782
Emulsifying ointment BP, 771
Emulsifying Wax, 770, 777
anionic, 770–771, 778
incompatibilities, quaternary ammonium compounds, 771
with white soft paraffin, 771
cationic, 778
cetrimide emulsifying wax, 778
incompatibilities, anionic surfactants/drugs, 778
nomenclature, 772, 778
nonionic, 541, 771, 777
cetomacrogol emulsifying wax, 777
phenol, 777
quaternary ammonium compounds, 777
surfactants, 772, 778
Emulsifying wax BP, 772, 778
Emulsifying wax USP, 772, 778
Emulsion stabilizers
cellulose, microcrystalline and carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 134
colloidal silicon dioxide, 185
hydrophobic colloidal silica, 309
hypromellose, 326
myristyl alcohol, 456
phospholipids, 499
polyethylene glycol, 518
poly(methylvinyl ether/maleic anhydride), 534
zinc acetate, 791
Encapsin, 210
Encapsulating agents, shellac, 616
Enstatite, 403
Enteric formulations/coating agents
acetyltributyl citrate, 8
carbomers, 110
cellulose acetate phthalate, 144
colonic drug delivery, 298
guar gum, 298
hypromellose acetate succinate, 330
hypromellose phthalate, 333
polymethacrylates, 526
polyvinyl acetate phthalate, 562
potassium chloride, model drug, 572
shellac, 616
Sureteric, 562
tributyl citrate, 749
triethyl citrate, 756
triolein, 757
white wax, 779
zein, 790
see also Controlled-release agents
Entonox, 464
Equal, 48
Ergoplast FDB, 225
Erucic acid
canola oil, 108
colza oil, 108
rapeseed oil, 108–109
Erycorbin, 250
Erythorbic acid, 45, 250
Erythorbic acid sodium salt, 251
Erythrite, 251
Erythritol, **251**
Erythritolum, 251
Erythroglucin, 251
D-*erythro*-hex-2-enoic acid, 250
D-*erythro*-hex-2-enoic acid sodium salt, 251
D-*erythro*-3-ketohexonic acid lactone, 250
Erythromycin stearate, 403, 408
Essential oils, 247, 443
solubilizing agents
polyethylene alkyl ethers, 537
polyoxyethylene castor oil derivatives, 543
polyoxyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters, 550
Esterifying agents, propionic acid, 586
Esterwax NF, 777
Estol IPM, 348
Ethal, 155
Ethanecarboxylic acid, 586
N,*N*-1,2-Ethanediylbis[*N*-(carboxymethyl)glycine], 247
N,*N*′-1,2-ethanediylbis[*N*-(carboxymethyl)glycine] dipotassium salt, 248
N,*N*′-1,2-ethanediylbis[*N*-(carboxymethyl)glycine] tetrasodium salt, 249
N,*N*′-1,2-ethanediylbis[*N*-(carboxymethyl)glycine] trisodium salt, 249
Ethanoic acid, 5

Ethanol, 17–19
anhydrous, 18
dilute, 19
Ethanol (96%), 17
Ethanol (96 per cent), 17
Ethanolamine, 450
Ethanolic acid, 5
Ethanolum (96 per centum), 17
1,2-ethenedicarboxylic acid, 276
Ethenol, homopolymer, 564
1-Ethenyl-2-pyrrolidinone homopolymer, 208, 581
Ethiops iron, 340
Ethispheres, 129
Ethocel, 262
Ethol, 155
Ethosperse, 536
3-Ethoxy-4-hydroxybenzaldehyde, 261
Ethoxylated fatty acid esters, 554
Ethyl acetate, **253**
Ethyl Acrylate and Methyl Methacrylate Copolymer Dispersion, 525
Ethyl alcohol, 17
Ethyl benzene-1,2-dicarboxylate, 230
Ethyl cellulose, with cellulose acetate phthalate, 144
Ethyl citrate, 756
Ethyl ethanoate, 253
Ethyl gallate, 589
Ethyl hydroxide, 17
Ethyl Hydroxybenzoate, 270
Ethyl 4-hydroxybenzoate potassium salt, 272
Ethyl 4-hydroxybenzoate sodium salt, 272
Ethyl α-hydroxypropionate, 256
Ethyl lactate, **256**
Ethyl linoleate, 389
Ethyl maltol, **257**, 422
Ethyl (2-mercaptobenzoato-*S*)-mercury, sodium salt, 736
Ethyl 9-octadecenoate, 259
Ethyl oleate, **259**, 467
Ethyl Parahydroxybenzoate, 270
Ethyl parasept, 270
Ethyl phthalate, 230
2-Ethyl pyromeconic acid, 257
Ethyl (sodium *o*-mercaptobenzoato)mercury, 736
Ethyl 3,4,5-trihydroxybenzoate, 589
Ethyl vanillin, **261**, 761
Ethylan, 536
Ethylcellulose, **262**, 315, 329, 332, 440
compatible plasticizers, 266
Ethylcellulosum, 262
Ethylene fluoride, 232
Ethylene glycol monopalmitate, 268
Ethylene Glycol Monopalmitostearate, 267
Ethylene glycol monostearate, 268
Ethylene glycol palmitostearate, 267
Ethylene glycol stearate, 268
Ethylene glycol stearates, **267**
Ethylene glycoli monostearas, 268
Ethylene vinyl acetate, **268**
Ethylene vinyl acetate copolymer, 268
Ethylenebis(iminodiacetic acid), dipotassium salt, 248
Ethylenebis(iminodiacetic acid) dipotassium salt, 248
Ethylenebis(iminodiacetic acid) tetrasodium salt, 249
Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid, 247
calcium disodium chelate, 248
dipotassium salt, 248
tetrasodium salt, 249
trisodium salt, 249
Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid calcium disodium chelate, 248
Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid dipotassium salt, 248
Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid, disodium salt, 242
Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid tetrasodium salt, 249
Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid trisodium salt, 249
[(ethylenedinitrilo)tetraacetato]calciate(2-) disodium, 248
(ethylenedinitrilo)tetraacetic acid, 247
dipotassium salt, 248
tetrasodium salt, 249
(ethylenedinitrilo)tetraacetic acid dipotassium salt, 248
(ethylenedinitrilo)tetraacetic acid tetrasodium salt, 249
(ethylenedinitrilo)tetraacetic acid trisodium salt, 249
Ethyleneglycol monophenyl ether, 488
Ethyleneglycoli monopalmitostearas, 267
Ethylene/vinyl acetate copolymer, 268
Ethyleni glycoli stearas, 268
Ethylformic acid, 586
Ethylformic acid, sodium salt, hydrate, 661
N-ethylglucamine, 432
Ethylhydroxy cellulose, 311
Ethyl-4-hydroxybenzoate, 270
2-Ethyl-3-hydroxy-4*H*-pyran-4-one, 257
Ethyl-2-hydroxypropanoate, 256
Ethyl-2-hydroxypropionate, 256
Ethylic acid, 5
Ethylis acetas, 253
Ethylis oleas, 259
Ethylis parahydroxybenzoas, 270
Ethyl[2-mercaptobenzoato(2–)-*O*,*S*]-mercurate(1–) sodium, 736
Ethylolamine, 450
Ethylose, 311
Ethylparaben, 80, 270, 444, 598, 600
see also Parabens
Ethylparaben potassium, 272
Ethylparaben sodium, 272
Ethylprotal, 261
Ethylprotocatechuic aldehyde, 261
Ethyl-*S*-(–)-2-hydroxypropionate, 256
Etocas, 542
Eudragit, 525
Eudragit E, 525–526
Eudragit FS, 525–526
Eudragit L, 525–526
Eudragit L 30 D-55, 526
Eudragit L 30D, 562
Eudragit L 100-55, 526
Eudragit NE 30 D, 526
Eudragit NE 40 D, 526
Eudragit NM 30 D, 526
Eudragit RL, 525–526
Eudragit RS, 401, 525–526
Eudragit S, 525–526
Eumulgin, 542
Eurylon, 685
Eutanol G PH, 465
EVA, 268
EVA copolymer, 268
EVM, 268
Excelacs 3-Circles, 616
Excelacs 3-Stars, 616
Explocel, 206
Explosol, 663
Explotab, 663
Explotab CLV, 665
Explotab Low pH, 665
Expressed almond oil, 29
Exsiccated calcium sulfate, 107
Exsiccated sodium sulfite, 669
Extended-release agents *see* Sustained-release agents
Extra AS, 697
Extra P, 697
Extra S, 697
Extra ST, 697
Extra virgin olive oil, 471
Extract of carob, 147
Extractants, propylene glycol, 592

Famotidine, 742
Fancol, 128
Fatty acid esters, ethoxylated, 554
FD&C blue #2, 193
FD&C yellow #6, 194–195
Fecule, 685
β-fenethylalkohol, 490
β-fenylethanol, 490
Fermine, 236
Ferric ferrous oxide, 340
Ferric hydrate, 340
Ferric hydroxide, 340
Ferric hydroxide oxide, 340
Ferric oxide
anhydrous, 340
hydrated, 340
Ferric oxide hydrated, 340
Ferroan saponite, 612
Ferrosoferric oxide, 340
Ferroxide 78P, 340
Ferroxide 88P, 340
Ferroxide 212P, 340
Ferroxide 226P, 340
Ferroxide 510P, 340
Fibrocel, 129
Fillers *see* Diluents (tablet/capsule)
Film-forming agents
ammonium alginate, 41
chitosan, 159
chlorpheniramine maleate, 321
copovidone, 197
dibutyl phthalate, 225
dibutyl sebacate, 227
diethyl phthalate, 230
dimethyl phthalate, 236
ethyl lactate, 256
ethylcellulose, 263
gelatin, 278
hydroxyethyl cellulose, 311
hydroxypropyl cellulose, 318, 321
hypromellose, 326
hypromellose acetate succinate, 330
maleic acid, 411
maltodextrin, 418
opacifiers, calcium carbonate, 86
polydextrose, 513
polyethylene glycol, 518, 521
polyethylene oxide, 523
polymethacrylates, 526
poly(methylvinyl ether/maleic anhydride), 534
polyvinyl acetate phthalate, 562
shellac, 616
starch, 690
triethyl citrate, 756
vanillin, 760
see also Coating agents
Fine virgin olive oil, 471
Finetose, 422
Finetose F, 422
Finlac DC, 357–358
Finmalt L, 416
Finnfix, 118
Fixatives, perfume, diethyl phthalate, 230
Flavinol, 739

Flavor enhancer, neohesperidin dihydrochalcone, 458
Flavor enhancers
acesulfame potassium, 3
aspartame, 48
citric acid monohydrate, 181
dibutyl sebacate, 227
ethyl maltol, 257
ethylcellulose, 263
fructose, 273
maltol, 421
monosodium glutamate, 452
neohesperidin dihydrochalcone, 458
neotame, 460
saccharin, 605
saccharin sodium, 608
sodium cyclamate, 643
thaumatin, 735
trehalose, 746
xylitol, 786
Flavoring agent, capric acid, 384
Flavoring agents
adipic acid, 11
n-butyl lactate, 257
confectioner's sugar, 710
denatonium benzoate, 217
dibutyl sebacate, 227
ethyl acetate, 253
ethyl lactate, 256
ethyl maltol, 257
ethyl vanillin, 261
ethylcellulose, 262
fumaric acid, 276
leucine, 387
malic acid, 411
maltol, 421
menthol, 433
methionine, 436
monosodium glutamate, 452
phosphoric acid, 503
propionic acid, 587
sodium acetate, 620
sodium lactate, 650
sodium propionate, 661
tartaric acid, 731
thymol, 739
triethyl citrate, 756
vanillin, 760
Flolys, 282
FlowLac 90, 376
FlowLac 100, 376
Fluidamid R444P, 695
Fluorocarbon 134a, 733
Fluorocarbon emulsifying agents, poloxamer, 507
Foaming agents
hypromellose, 326
polyethylene alkyl ethers, 537
Folic acid, 403, 408
Forlan 500, 484
Formaldehyde, 398
Formaldehyde hydrosulfite, 645
Formaldehyde sodium sulfoxylate, 645
Formaldehydesulfoxylic acid sodium salt, 645
Forsterite, 403
Freeze-drying stabilizers/carriers
albumin, 15
lactose
anhydrous, 359
monohydrate, 364
mannitol, 424
sodium bicarbonate, 630
trehalose, 746
see also Cryoprotectants
French chalk, purified, 728
Freon, 173
Frigen, 173
Frigen 22, 172
Frigen 134a, 733
Fructamyl, 273
Fructofin, 273
β-D-Fructofuranosyl-O-α-D-galactopyranosyl-(1→6)-α-D-glucopyranoside, anhydrous, 603
β-D-Fructofuranosyl-O-α-D-galactopyranosyl-(1→6)-α-D-glucopyranoside pentahydrate, 603
β-D-fructofuranosyl-α-D-glucopyranoside, 703
D-(–)-fructopyranose, 273
Fructose, 224, 273
furanose form, 275
high-fructose syrup, 275
invert sugar, 706
liquid, 275
powdered, 275
pyranose form, 275
sweetness *vs.* dextrose, 273
sweetness *vs.* sucrose, 273, 275
with povidone, 273
with silicon dioxide, 275
Fructosum, 273
Fruit sugar, 273
Fruitose, 273
Frutafit, 339
Fujicalin, 94–96
Fumaric acid, 183, 276, 411, 413, 732
Fumaric acid, octadecyl ester, sodium salt, 667
Fumed silica, 185
Fumed silicon dioxide, 185
Fuming sulfuric acid, 720
Fungicides *see* Antifungal agents
Fused borax, 634
Fused sodium borate, 634

G, 295
Galactomannan, 146
Galactomannan polysaccharide, 298
Galactomannans, guar gum, 298
4-O-(β-D-Galactopyranosyl)-D-glucitol, 357
4-O-(β-D-Galactopyranosyl)-D-glucitol dihydrate, 357
4-O-(β-D-Galactopyranosyl)-D-glucitol monohydrate, 357
O-β-D-Galactopyranosyl-(1→4)-β-D-glucopyranose, 359
O-β-D-Galactopyranosyl-(1→4)-α-D-glucopyranose monohydrate, 364, 376
β-galactosido-sorbitol, 357
Galactosol, 298
galenIQ, 342
Gallic acid propyl ester, 587
Galzin, 792
Gamma aluminum oxide, 37
Gamma Cyclodextrin, 210
Gamma tocopherol, 32–33
Gantrez, 534
Gantrez AN-119, 534
Garantose, 605
Gas-forming agents
potassium bicarbonate, 570
sodium bicarbonate, 630
Gelatin, 33, 278, 427
absorbable, 278
hard capsules, 278, 762
plasticizers
glycerin, 283
mannitol, 424
sorbitol, 679
Gelatin sponge, 278
Gelatina, 278
Gelatine, 278
Gelcarin, 122
Geleol, 290
Gelling agents
aluminum stearate, 35
carbomers, 113
carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 119
carrageenan, 122
chitosan, 159
colloidal silicon dioxide, 186
gelatin, 278
glyceryl monooleate, 289
glyceryl palmitostearate, 293
guar gum, 299–300
hydroxyethyl cellulose, 314
pectin, 478
polyethylene alkyl ethers, 537
polyethylene glycol, 518
polyethylene oxide, 523
polymethacrylates, 526
propylene carbonate, 590
sodium ascorbate, 625
sorbitol, 680
xanthan gum, 782
zinc acetate, 791
see also Hydrogels; Stiffening agents; Thickening agents; Viscosity-increasing agents
Gelosa, 13
Gelose, 13
Gelsorb, 393
Gelucire 44/14, 557
Gelucire 50/13, 557
Gelvatol, 564
Gendorf 450, 608
Genetron, 173
Genetron 134a, 733
Genetron 142b, 171
Genetron 152a, 232
Genoplast B, 225
Genu, 122, 478
Germall 115, 337
Germall II, 338
Ghassoulite, 301
Gifu Shellac GBN-PH, 616
Gifu Shellac Pearl-811, 616
Gingelly oil, 614
Gingili oil, 614
Ginseng, Korean red, 422
Glacial acetic acid, 5
Glaze, pharmaceutical, 618
Glicerol, 283
Glidants
calcium phosphate, tribasic, 99
cellulose, powdered, 136
colloidal silicon dioxide, 185
hydrophobic colloidal silica, 309
magnesium oxide, 400
magnesium silicate, 402
magnesium trisilicate, 408
silicon dioxide, 275
talc, 728
Glipizide, 432
Glucens, substituted, 160
Glucidex, 418
D-Glucitol, 679
Glucodry, 418
Glucomalt, 282
D-(+)-Glucopyranose, anhydrous, 224
D-(+)-glucopyranose monohydrate, 222
α-D-Glucopyranoside, 1,3,4,6-tetra-O-acetyl-β-D-fructofuranosyl-, tetraacetate, 707
α-D-glucopyranosyl-β-D-fructofuranoside, 703
4-O-α-D-Glucopyranosyl-D-glucitol, 414
4-O-α-D-Glucopyranosyl-β-D-glucopyranose anhydrous, 422
4-O-α-D-Glucopyranosyl-β-D-glucopyranose monohydrate, 422

α-D-glucopyranosyl-α-D-glucopyranoside, 746
4-O-α-D-glucopyranosyl-β-D-glucose, 422
1-O-α-D-glucopyranosyl-D-mannitol dihydrate (1,1-GPM), 342
6-O-α-D-glucopyranosyl-D-sorbitol (1,6-GPS), 342
Glucosaccharonic acid, 250
Glucose, 222
  and polydextrose, 514
  anhydrous, 224
  liquid, 222, 224, 424
Glucose, liquid, **282**
Glucose Monohydrate, 222
Glucose syrup, 282
  hydrogenated, 416
4-(α-D-glucosido)-D-glucose, 422
(α-D-glucosido)-α-D-glucoside, 746
Glucosum liquidum, 282
Glucosum monohydricum, 222
Glucosweet, 282
Gluside, 605
  soluble, 608
Glutamic acid monosodium salt, 452
Glutamic acid monosodium salt monohydrate, 452
Glutamic acid, sodium salt, 452
Gly, 295
Glycerides
  almond oil, 29
  hydrogenated vegetable, 722
Glycerin, **283**, 592, 725
  concentrated, 283
Glycerin monostearate, 290
Glycerin palmitostearate, 293
Glycerin solutions, diluted, 285
Glycerin tricaprylate, 751
Glycerine, 283
Glycerine monostearate, 290
Glycerol, 283
Glycerol (85 per cent), 285
Glycerol behenate, 286
Glycerol Dibehenate, 286
Glycerol Mono-oleate, 288
Glycerol monostearate, 290
Glycerol Monostearate 40–55, 290
Glycerol palmitostearate, 293
Glycerol phosphatides, 499
Glycerol stearate, 290
Glycerol triacetate, 748
Glycerol tricaprylate, 751
Glycerol trielaidate, 757
Glycerol trioctanoate, 751
Glyceroli dibehenas, 286
Glyceroli mono-oleas, 288
Glyceroli monostearas, 290
Glycerol-1-oleate, 288
Glycerolum, 283
Glyceryl behenate, **286**, 294
Glyceryl dibehenate, 286
Glyceryl monobehenate, 286
Glyceryl monooleate, **288**, 292
Glyceryl monostearate, 268, 289–290, 294
  self-emulsifying, 292
Glyceryl Monostearate 40–55, 290
Glyceryl palmitostearate, 268, 287, 292–293
Glyceryl stearate, 290
Glyceryl triacetate, 748
Glyceryl tribehenate, 286
Glyceryl tricaprylate, 751
Glyceryl tricaprylate/caprate, 429
Glyceryl triisooctanoate, 752
Glyceryl trioctanoate, 751
Glyceryl trioleate, 757
Glyceryl tris-2-ethylhexanoate, 752
Glyceryl-tri-(12-hydroxystearate), 128
Glycine, **295**, 480
Glycine hydrochloride, 296
Glycinium, 295
Glycinum, 295
Glycoamin, 295
Glycocoll, 295
Glycofurol, **297**
Glycofurol 75, 297
Glycolixir, 295
Glycoll, 295
Glycolys, 663
Glycolys LM, 665
Glycolys Low pH, 665
Glycolys LV, 665
Glycon, 466
Glycon G-100, 283
Glykocellan, 118
Glypesin, 304
GMS, 290
Goat's thorn, 744
Gohsenol, 564
Gomenoleo oil, 470
Gomme de caroube, 146
Gossypol, 202
Gossypose, 603
Grain alcohol, 17
GranuLac, 364
Granulating agents
  copovidone, 197
  hypromellose, 326
  isomalt, 343
  liquid glucose, 282
  maltitol, 414
  polydextrose, 513
  sucrose, 703
  vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate, 764
Grape sugar, 222
Gray acetate, 82
Griffithite, 612
Grindsted, 122, 782
Groco, 466
Groundnut oil, 476
GS-Ceresin, 148
Guar acetate, 300
Guar acetate phthalate, 300
Guar flour, 298
Guar Galactomannan, 298
Guar galactomannanum, 298
Guar gum, 2, 298, 300, 784
  and microcrystalline cellulose, 132
  oxidized, 300
Guar phthalate, 300
L-gulo-D-mannoglycuronan, 20
Gum acacia, 1
Gum arabic, 1
Gum benjamin, 744
Gum dragon, 744
Gum tragacanth, 744
Gummi africanum, 1
Gummi arabicum, 1
Gummi mimosae, 1
Gypsum, 105
  calcined, 107
  dried, 107

Halite, 639
HallStar CO-1695, 155
HallStar GMO, 288
HallStar GMS, 290
HallStar IPM-NF, 348
Halocarbon 152a, 232
Halofantrine, 399
Halon, 173
Haloperidol, 760
Hampshire glycine, 295
Hard Fat, 722
Hard fat suppository bases, 431, 722
  additives, 722–723
  chemical reactivity, 723
  melting characteristics, 723
  rheology, 723
Hard fat triglyceride esters, 722
Hard water, 769
Hard wax, 474
  alternatives, 762
Hardening agents (suppositories)
  hydrogenated vegetable oil, 762
  stearic acid, 697
Hatcol DBP, 225
HCFC 22, 172
HCFC 142b, 171
HCFCs
  HCFC 22, 172
  HCFC 142b, 171
  see also Hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs)
HD-Eutanol V PH, 468
HE cellulose, 311
Heavy kaolin, 352
Heavy liquid petrolatum, 445
Heavy magnesium carbonate, 397
Heavy magnesium oxide, 400
Heavy mineral oil, 445
HEC, 311
2-HE-β-CD, 213
Hectabrite AW, 301
Hectabrite DP, 301
Hector clay, 301
Hectorite, **301**, 613
Helianthi annui oleum raffinatum, 721
Hellulosum microcristallinum, 129
Hematite, 340
HEMC, 314
1-heptadecanecarboxylic acid, 697
Heptafluoropropane, 734
1,1,1,2,3,3,3-Heptafluoropropane, 303
Heptafluoropropane (HFC), **303**
Hermesetas, 605
Hesperetin-7-rutinoside, 459
Hesperidin, 459
Hesperitin 7-rhamnoglucoside, 459
Hest TC, 751
Hetastarch, 311
Hexadecanoic acid, 473
Hexadecanoic acid isopropyl ester, 350
Hexadecanoic acid 1-methylethyl ester, 350
Hexadecanoic acid sodium salt, 473
Hexadecan-1-ol, 155
1-hexadecanol, 155
n-hexadecoic acid, 473
n-hexadecyl alcohol, 155
Hexadecylic acid, 473
Hexadecylpyridinium chloride, 157
1-hexadecylpyridinium chloride, 157
1-Hexadecylpyridinium chloride monohydrate, 157
Hexadecyltrimethylammonium bromide, 152–153
Hexadecyltrimethylammonium hydroxide, 152
Hexadexylpyridinium bromide, 158
Hexadienic acid, 672
Hexadienoic acid, 672
2,4-hexadienoic acid, 672
(*E*,*E*)-Hexa-2,4-dienoic acid, 672
2,4-hexadienoic acid (*E*,*E*)-potassium salt, 579
2,4-Hexadienoic acid potassium salt, 579
Hexahydrothymol, 433
1,1'-hexamethylene-bis[5-(*p*-chlorophenyl)biguanide], 162
1,1′-hexamethylenebis[5-(4-chlorophenyl)biguanide] diacetate, 164
1,1′-hexamethylenebis[5-(4-chlorophenyl)biguanide] digluconate, 165

1,1′-hexamethylenebis[5-(4-chlorophenyl)biguanide]dihydrochloride, 165
Hexamic acid, 644
Hexanedioic acid, 11
1,6-hexanedioic acid, 11
1,2,3,4,5,6-hexanehexol, 679
Hexaplast M/B, 225
Hexetidine, **304**
Hexetidinum, 304
Hexigel, 304
Hexocil, 304
Hexoral, 304
Hextril, 304
HFA227, 303
HFA 134a, 733
HFC227, 303
HFC 152a, 232, 733
HFCs
HFC 134a, 733
HFC 152a, 232
HFC227, 303
see also Hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs)
Hibiclens, 165
Hibiscrub, 165
Hibitane, 165
Hibitane diacetate, 164
Hidroksipropilbetadeksas, 315
High-fructose syrup, 275
Hochdisperses silicum dioxid, 185
Hog gum (caramania gum), 745
Hombitan FF-Pharma, 741
Hopper salt, 637
HP-50, 336
HP-55, 336
HP-55S, 336
HPMC, 326
HPMCAS, 330
HPMCP, 333
HSA, 14
Huile d'amande, 29
Huile de carthame, 610
Huile de colza, 108
Huile de tournesol, 721
Human Albumin Solution, 14
Human serum albumin, 14
normal, 14
Humectants
ammonium alginate, 41
butylene glycol, 77
cyclomethicone, 215
glycerin, 283
polydextrose, 513
propylene glycol, 592
sodium hyaluronate, 646
sodium lactate, 650
sorbitol, 679
tagatose, 727
trehalose, 746
triacetin, 748
triethanolamine, 754
xylitol, 786
Hyaluronan, 646–647
see also Sodium hyaluronate
Hyaluronate sodium, 646
Hyaluronic acid, 647
see also Sodium hyaluronate
Hyamine 1622, 59
Hyamine 3500, 56
Hydagen CAT, 756
Hydoxipropylbetadex, 315
Hydrated aluminum silicate, 352
Hydrated ferric oxide, 340
Hydrated lime, 91
Hydrazine yellow, 195
Hydrocarbons (HC), 236, 306
Hydrochloric acid, **308**
concentrated, 308
dilute, 309
Hydrochloric Acid, Concentrated, 308
Hydrochlorofluorocarbons (HCFCs)
chlorodifluoroethane, 171
nomenclature, 175
Hydrocortisone, 51
Hydrofluoroalkanes (HFAs), tetrafluoroethane, 733
Hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs)
difluoroethane, 232
heptafluoropropane, 303
tetrafluoroethane, 733
Hydrofol, 473
Hydrofol acid 1255, 383
Hydrofol acid 1295, 383
Hydrogels
hydroxyethyl cellulose, 314
sodium alginate, 622
urethane, 518
Hydrogen oxide, 766
Hydrogen phosphate, 503
Hydrogen sulfate, 719
Hydrogenated castor oil, 128, 763
Hydrogenated coconut oil PEG 1500 esters, 557
Hydrogenated cottonseed oil, 762
Hydrogenated glucose syrup, 416
Hydrogenated isomaltulose, 342
Hydrogenated lanolin, 379–380
Hydrogenated maltose, 414
Hydrogenated Oil, 762
Hydrogenated palatinose, 342
Hydrogenated palm oil, 762
Hydrogenated palm oil PEG 1500 esters, 557
Hydrogenated palm/palm kernel oil PEG 300 esters, 557
Hydrogenated soybean oil, 762
Hydrogenated vegetable glycerides, 722
Hydrogenated vegetable oil, 431, 762
type I, 129, 203, 762
type II, 763
applications, 763
Hydrogenated vegetable oil, type II, **763**
Hydrogenated wool fat, 379
α-Hydro-ω-hydroxypoly(oxy-1,2-ethanediyl), 517
α-Hydro-ω-hydroxypoly(oxyethylene)poly (oxypropylene) poly(oxyethylene) block copolymer, 506
Hydroksipropylbetadeksi, 315
Hydromagnesite, 397
2-hydroperfluoropropane, 303
Hydrophobic Colloidal Anhydrous Silica, 309
Hydrophobic colloidal silica, 188, 309
Hydrous lanolin, 379–380
Hydrous magnesium calcium silicate, 728
Hydrous magnesium silicate, 728
Hydroxyaluminum distearate, 36
Hydroxyaluminum tristearate, 36
4-Hydroxy-*m*-anisaldehyde, 760
Hydroxybenzene, 485
4-hydroxybenzoic acid butyl ester, 78
4-hydroxybenzoic acid ethyl ester, 270
4-hydroxybenzoic acid methyl ester, 441
4-hydroxybenzoic acid propyl ester, 596, 599
Hydroxybutanedioic acid, 411
(*R*)-(+)-Hydroxybutanedioic acid, 413
(*RS*)-(±)-Hydroxybutanedioic acid, 411
(*S*)-(–)-hydroxybutanedioic acid, 413
2-hydroxy-1,4-butanedioic acid, 411
3-hydroxy-*p*-cymene, 739
1-hydroxy-1,2-ethanedicarboxylic acid, 411
4-hydroxy-3-ethoxybenzaldehyde, 261
β-hydroxyethyl benzene, 490
Hydroxyethyl cellulose, 266, 311, 315, 321, 329, 332, 440
2-hydroxyethyl cellulose ether, 311
2-hydroxyethyl ester stearic acid, 268
Hydroxyethyl ether cellulose, 311
Hydroxyethyl methylcellulose, 314
β-hydroxyethyl phenyl ether, 488
Hydroxyethyl starch, 311
4-*O*-(2-Hydroxyethyl)-1-*O*-[2,5,7,8-tetramethyl-2-(4,8,12-trimethyltridecyl)-3,4-dihydrochromen-6-yl]butanedioate, 764
β-hydroxyethylamine, 450
2-hydroxyethylamine, 450
Hydroxyethylcellulose, 311
Hydroxyethylcellulosum, 311
2-Hydroxyethyl-β-cyclodextrin, **213**, 716
2-Hydroxyethyl-12-hydroxyoctadecanoate, 391
Hydroxyethylmethyl cellulose, 266, 314, 324, 329, 440
Hydroxyethylmethylcellulose, 314
3-hydroxy-2-ethyl-4-pyrone, 257
Hydroxylapatite, 99–100
Hydroxylpropyl starch, 325
p-hydroxy-*m*-methoxybenzaldehyde, 760
4-Hydroxy-3-methoxybenzaldehyde, 760
(3*S*,4*S*,5*R*)-2-(hydroxymethyl)oxane-2,3,4,5-tetrol, 727
3-Hydroxy-2-methyl-4 *H* -pyran-4-one, 421
3-hydroxy-1-methyl-4-isopropylbenzene, 739
3-Hydroxy-2-methyl-(1,4-pyran), 421
3-hydroxy-2-methyl-4-pyrone, 421
N-(hydroxymethyl)-*N*-(1,3-dihydroxymethyl-2,5-dioxo-4-imidazolidinyl)-*N*′-(hydroxymethyl)urea, 338
(2*R*,3*R*,4*S*,5*R*,6*R*)-2-(Hydroxymethyl)-6-[(2*R*,3*R*,4*S*,5*R*,6*R*)-3,4,5-trihydroxy-6-(hydroxymethyl)oxan-2-yl]oxy-oxane-3,4,5-triol anhydrous, 746
(2*R*,3*R*,4*S*,5*R*,6*R*)-2-(Hydroxymethyl)-6-[(2*R*,3*R*,4*S*,5*R*,6*R*)-3,4,5-trihydroxy-6-(hydroxymethyl)oxan-2-yl]oxy-oxane-3,4,5-triol dihydrate, 746
12-Hydroxyoctadecanoic acid polymer with α-hydro-ω-hydroxypoly(oxy-1,2-ethanediyl), 391
1-hydroxy-2-phenoxyethane, 488
2-hydroxypropane 1,2,3-tricarboxylic acid, 183
2-hydroxy-β-1,2,3-propanetricarboxylic acid, 183
2-hydroxypropane-1,2,3-tricarboxylic acid monohydrate, 181
2-Hydroxy-1,2,3-propanetricarboxylic acid triethyl ester, 756
2-Hydroxy-1,2,3-propanetricarboxylic acid tripotassium salt anhydrous, 574
2-Hydroxy-1,2,3-propanetricarboxylic acid tripotassium salt monohydrate, 574
2-hydroxypropanoic acid, 355
2-hydroxypropanoic acid, calcium salt, 92
2-hydroxypropanoic acid ethyl ester, 256
2-hydroxypropanoic acid monosodium salt, 650
2-hydroxypropanol, 592
α-hydroxypropionic acid, 355
2-Hydroxypropionic acid, 355
(*R*)-(–)-2-Hydroxypropionic acid, 355
(*RS*)-(±)-2-Hydroxypropionic acid, 355
(*S*)-(+)-2-Hydroxypropionic acid, 355
Hydroxypropyl alginate, 594
Hydroxypropyl betadex, **315**, 716
Hydroxypropyl cellulose, 314, 317, 324, 329, 332
low-substituted, 314, 321
Hydroxypropyl cellulose, low-substituted, **322**
2-hydroxypropyl cyclomaltoheptaose, 315
2-hydroxypropyl ether (low-substituted) cellulose, 322

Hydroxypropyl methylcellulose, 326
Hydroxypropyl methylcellulose benzene-1,2-dicarboxylate, 333
2-hydroxypropyl methylcellulose phthalate, 333
Hydroxypropyl starch, **325**, 690
pregelatinized, 325
Hydroxypropyl starch–methyl methacrylate (HS-MMA), 325
Hydroxypropylbetadeksum, 315
Hydroxypropyl-betadex, 213, 315
Hydroxypropylbetadexum, 315
Hydroxypropylcellulose, 317
Hydroxypropylcellulosum, 317
3-Hydroxypropyl-β-cyclodextrin, **316**, 716
2-hydroxypropyl-β-cyclodextrin, 315
12-hydroxystearic acid polyethylene glycol copolymer, 391
Hydroxysuccinic acid, 411
2-hydroxysuccinic acid, 411
6-hydroxy-5-[(4-sulfophenyl)azo]-2-naphthalenesulfonic acid disodium salt, 194
α-hydroxytoluene, 64, 203
butylated, 379–380, 382
3-hydroxytoluene, 204–205
Hyetellose, 311
Hyfatol 16-95, 155
Hyfatol 16-98, 155
Hyfatol 18-95, 700
Hyfatol 18-98, 700
Hygum TP-1, 122
Hylon, 685
Hymetellose, 314
Hy-Phi, 466
Hyprolose, 317
Hyprolose, low-substituted, 322
Hypromellose, 314–315, 321, 326, 332, 336, 440
Hypromellose acetate succinate, 329–330
Hypromellose phthalate, 145, 329, 332–333, 563
film coat splitting, 333, 335
plasticizers, 333
Hypromellosi phthalas, 333
Hypromellosum, 326
HyQual, 35, 103, 793
HyQual Aluminum Monostearate NF Fine Powder, 36
HyQual Aluminum Monostearate NF Powder, 36
Hystrene, 697
Hystrene 9016, 473
Hystrene 9512, 383

Ibuprofen, 156
Ichthammol, 450, 484
Icing sugar, 710
Idoxuridine, 238
Imidazolidinyl urea, 337
Imidurea, **337**
and methylparabens, 442
synergists, 247
2,2′-Iminobisethanol, 228
2,2′-iminodiethanol, 228
Imperial, 728
Implantable drug delivery systems
aliphatic polyesters, 23
gelatin, 278
glyceryl monostearate, 291
Improved Kelmar, 566
Impruvol, 75
Imwitor 191, 290
Imwitor 900, 290
Imwitor 948, 288
Indigo blue, soluble, 193
Indigo carmine, 193
Indigotine, 193
Industrene, 466, 697
Industrene 4516, 473
Industrial methylated spirit, 19
Inhalac, 362
Inhalation lactose, 362
Inhalers
dry powder diluents/carrier, lactose, anhydrous, 359
dry powder diluents/carriers
inhalation lactose, 362
mannitol, 424
Inhalers, dry powder diluents/carrier, *see also* Metered-dose inhalant formulations
Inipol DS, 11
Insect repellents
dibutyl phthalate, 226
dimethyl phthalate, 236
Instagel, 278
Instant Pure-Cote, 690
Instastarch, 691
Intense sweeteners *see* Sweetening agents
Intrasol, 739
Inulin, **339**
Invert sugar, 706
Iodine, 247
Ionol CP, 75
IPA, 346
Irish moss extract, 122
Iron hydrate, 340
Iron hydroxide, 340
Iron hydroxide oxide, 340
Iron (II, III) oxide, 340
Iron (III) oxide, anhydrous, 340
Iron (III) oxide monohydrate, yellow, 340
Iron oxide, 340, 721
Iron oxide black, 340
Iron oxide red, 340
Iron oxide yellow, 340
Iron oxides, 189, 193, 340
Iron oxides (Fe, 340
Isceon, 173
Isceon 22, 172
Isceon 134a, 733
Isinglas
Bengal, 13
Ceylon, 13
Chinese, 13
Japan, 13
Isoarachidyl alcohol, 465
D-isoascorbic acid, 250
Isobutane, 306
Isomalt, **342**
with polydextrose, 513
IsoMaltidex 16500, 342
Isomaltulose, hydrogenated, 342
Isomaltum, 342
Isopropanol, 346
Isopropyl alcohol, 18, 346
Isopropyl cresol, 739
Isopropyl ester of myristic acid, 348
Isopropyl hexadecanoate, 350
Isopropyl lanolate, 380
Isopropyl metacresol, 739
Isopropyl myristate, **348**, 351
Isopropyl palmitate, 349–350
Isopropyl-*m*-cresol, 739
6-isopropyl-*m*-cresol, 739
Isopropylis myristas, 348
Isopropylis palmitas, 350
2-isopropyl-5-methylcyclohexanol, 433
2-isopropyl-5-methylphenol, 739
Isopropylmyristat, 348
Isopropylpalmitat, 350
Isotrehalose, 747
Isotron, 173
Isovitamin C, 250

Jaguar gum, 298
Japan agar, 13
Japan isinglass, 13
Jarcol 1-20, 465
Jeechem, 542
Jeecol ODD, 465
Jeweller's borax, 634
Jinjili oil, 614

Kainite, 573
Kali disulfis, 577
Kalii chloridum, 572
Kalii citras, 574
Kalii hydrogenocarbonas, 570
Kalii hydroxidum, 576
Kalii sorbas, 579
Kalinite, 567
Kalipol 32, 659
Kalium benzoat, 569
Kalium hydroxydatum, 576
Kaltostat, 83
Kaolin, 55, 62, 302, 352, 396, 613
heavy, 352
light, 352
light (natural), 352
Kaolin, Heavy, 352
Kaolinite, 352–353
Kaolinosis, 353
Kaolinum ponderosum, 352
Karstenite, 105
Karvol, 740
Katchung oil, 476
Katemfe, 735
KC Flock, 136
Kelacid, 20
Kelcoloid, 594
Kelcosol, 622
Keldent, 782
Keltone, 622
Keltose, 41
Keltrol, 782
Kemilub, 793
Kemira AFDC, 741
Kemistab EC-F, 103
Kemsol, 238
Kemstrene, 283
Keoflo ADP, 695
Kessco CA, 155
Kessco EO, 259
Kessco GMO, 288
Kessco GMS, 290
Kessco IPM 95, 348
Kessco IPP, 350
Ketoprofen, 294
β-ketopropane, 7
2-ketopyrrolidine, 600
Kimiloid, 594
Klea 134a, 733
Kleptose, 210
Kleptose HPB, 315
Klinit, 786
Klucel, 317
Kodaflex DBP, 225
Kodaflex DBS, 227
Kodaflex DEP, 230
Kodaflex DMP, 236
Kolatin, 278
Kollicoat MAE, 525
Kollicoat MAE 30 DP, 526
Kollicoat MAE 100 P, 526
Kollidon, 581
Kollidon CL, 208
Kollidon CL-M, 208
Kollidon VA 64, 196, 198

Kortacid 1895, 697
Koster Keunen Ceresine, 148
Kronos 1171, 741
Krystar, 273

Labrafac CC, 429
Labrafac Lipo, 429
Labrafil M1944CS, 557
Labrafil M2125CS, 557
Labrasol, 557
Lac, 616
Lac dye, 618
Lacca, 616
Laccaic acid B, 618
Lacolin, 650
Lactic acid, 27, 93, 355, 516, 651
racemic, 355
DL-lactic acid, 355
Lactic acid butyl ester, 257
Lactic acid, calcium salt, 92
D-lactic acid-L copolymer, 515
Lactic acid ethyl ester, 256
Lactic acid homopolymer, 515
Lactic acid monosodium salt, 650
D,L-lactic acid polymer, 515
Lactic acid sodium salt, 650
D-lactide-L-lactide copolymer, 515
DL-lactide polymer, 515
Lactil, 357
Lactite, 357
Lactitol, **357**
sweetness *vs.* sucrose, 358
with lactose, 357
with polydextrose, 513
Lactitol Monohydrate, 357
Lactitolum monohydricum, 357
Lactobiosit, 357
Lactochem, 364
Lactohale, 362
γ-lactone, 250
Lactopress Anhydrous, 359
Lactopress Anhydrous 250, 359
Lactopress Spray-Dried, 376
Lactopress Spray-Dried 250, 376
Lactose, 276, 364, 376
anhydrous, 359, 363, 368, 377
inhalation, 361–362, 368, 377
monohydrate, 361, 363–364, 370, 372–373, 375, 377
and corn starch, 368
and microcrystalline cellulose, 368
and povidone, 368
and powdered cellulose, 368
spray dried, 361, 368, 376
with lactitol, 357
Lactose, anhydrous, **359**
Lactose Hydrate, 364
Lactose, inhalation, **362**
Lactose, monohydrate, **364**
Lactose, monohydrate and corn starch, **370**
Lactose, monohydrate and microcrystalline cellulose, **371**
Lactose, monohydrate and povidone, **373**
Lactose, monohydrate and powdered cellulose, **374**
Lactose monohydrate, O-β-D-galactopyranosyl-(1→4)-α-D-glucopyranose monohydrate, 362
Lactose, spray-dried, **376**
Lactosit, 357
Lactosum anhydricum, 359
Lactosum monohydricum, 364
Lacty, 357
Laevulose, 273
Lakes (coloring agents), 189
Lampante virgin olive oil, 471
Lanalcolum, 382
Lanette, 770
Lanette 16, 155
Lanette 18, 700
Lanette O, 150
Lanette SX, 770
Lanette Wax KS, 456
Lanolin, 180, 378, 381, 383
acetylated, 380
anhydrous, 378
hydrogenated, 379–380
hydrous, 379–380, 383
liquid, 380
modified, 379–380
purified, 378
water-soluble, 380
Lanolin alcohols, 180, 379, 381–382, 449–450, 484–485
and mineral oil, 448, 485
and petrolatum, 450, 483–484
and white soft paraffin, 484
and yellow soft paraffin, 484
mineral oil and, 449
Lanolin alcohols ointment, 485
Lanolin anhydrous, 378
Lanolin hydrous, 180, 380
Lanolin oil, 380
Lanolin wax, 380
Lanolina, 378
Lansoprazole, 398
Laponite, 301
Larixinic acid, 421
Latex particle coating agents, 145
Lattosio, 359
Laughing gas, 463
Laureth-*N*, 536
Lauric acid, **383**, 455, 457, 473
Lauromacrogol, 536
Laurostearic acid, 383
Lauroyl Macrogolglycerides, 557
Lauroyl Polyoxylglycerides, 557
Lauryl gallate, 589
Lauryl sodium sulfate, 651
Lauryl sulfate, sodium salt, 651
N-lauryl-*N*,*N*,*N*-trimethylammonium bromide, 153
Layor carang, 13
Leavening agents, potassium bicarbonate, 570
Lecithin, **385**, 501
and alpha tocopherol, 31
solvents, glycerin monostearate, 290
unpurified, 387
vegetable, 385
Leinoleic acid, 389
Lemol, 564
Leu, 387
Leucine, **387–388**
DL-leucine, 387
Leucinum, 387
Levofloxacin, incompatibilities, sodium bicarbonate, 631
Levomenthol, 435
Levomentholum, 435
Levulose, 273
Lexalt L, 355
Lexgard B, 78
Lexol IPM-NF, 348
Lexol IPP-NF, 350
LH-21, 323
LH-22, 323
LH-31, 323
LH-32, 323
LH-B1, 323
L-HPC, 322
Lichenic acid, 276
Licianite, 612
Ligalub, 288
Light Anhydrous Silicic Acid, 185
Light kaolin, 352
Light kaolin (natural), 352
Light liquid petrolatum, 447
Light magnesium oxide, 400
Light mineral oil, 447, 475, 483
Light spar, 105
Light white mineral oil, 447
Lignocaine benzyl benzoate, 217
Lignoceric acid, peanut oil, 476
Lime
acetate of, 82
hydrated, 91
precipitated carbonate of, 86
slaked, 91
sulfate of, 107
Lime acetate, 82
Lime pyrolignite, 82
Lincomycin, 353
Linoleic acid, **389**
and almond oil, 29
and alpha tocopherol, 31
and corn oil, 199
and cottonseed oil, 202
castor oil, 126
peanut oil, 476
sunflower oil, 721
9,12-linoleic acid, 389
Linoleic acid ethyl ester, 389
Linolenic acid
and corn oil, 199
canola oil, 109
Linoleoyl Macrogolglycerides, 557
Linoleoyl Polyoxylglycerides, 557
Linolic acid, 389
Lion, 352
Lipex 107, 682
Lipex 108, 108
Lipex 200, 682
Lipex 204, 108
Lipo GMS, 290
Lipocol, 542
Lipocol C, 155
Lipocol S, 700
Lipocol S-DEO, 700
Lipoid, 499
Lipolan, 380
Liponate IPP, 350
Liponate SPS, 774
Liponic 70-NC, 679
Liponic 76-NC, 679
Liposyn II, 611
Lipovol CAN, 108
Lipovol CO, 126
Lipovol HS-K, 762
Lipovol SES, 614
Lipowax P, 777
Lipoxol, 517
Liquefied phenol, 487
Liquid fructose, 275
Liquid Glucose, 282
Liquid lanolin, 380
Liquid Maltitol, 416
Liquid paraffin and lanolin alcohols, 449
Liquid petrolatum, 445
heavy, 445
Lissolamine V, 152
Litesse, 513
Locust bean gum, 146
Locust tree extract, 147
Loperamide, 51
Lorol C14-95, 456
LoSalt, 573
Low erucic acid colza oil, 108
Low erucic acid rapeseed oil, 108

Low Substituted Hydroxypropylcellulose, 322
Low-substituted hydroxypropyl cellulose, 322
Low-substituted hyprolose, 322
Loxanol V, 456
LSC 5050, 385
LSC 6040, 385
Lubricants (general)
canola oil, 108
hydroxyethyl cellulose, 311
lauric acid, 383
leucine, 387
mineral oil, 446
octyldodecanol, 465
poloxamers, 507
polyvinyl alcohol, 564
sodium hyaluronate, 646
talc, 728
tricaprylin, 751
Lubricants (surgeons'/exam gloves)
sterilizable maize starch, 695–696
triethanolamine, 754
Lubricants (tablet/capsule)
calcium stearate, 103
glycerin monostearate, 290
glyceryl behenate, 286
glyceryl palmitostearate, 293
hydrogenated castor oil, 128
hydrogenated vegetable oil type I, 762
light mineral oil, 447
magnesium lauryl sulfate, 653
magnesium stearate, 404, 418
medium-chain triglycerides, 429
mineral oil, 445
myristic acid, 455
palmitic acid, 473
poloxamer, 507
polyethylene glycol, 517
sodium benzoate, 627
sodium chloride, 637
sodium lauryl sulfate, 651
sodium stearyl fumarate, 667
stearic acid, 691, 697
talc, 728
zinc stearate, 793
see also Coating agents
Lubricants (tablet/capsule)potassium benzoate, 569
Lubritab, 762
Lucianite, 612
Ludipress LCE, 373
Lunac P-95, 473
Lustre Clear, 132
Lutrol, 506, 508
Lutrol E, 517
Luviskol, 198
Luviskol VA, 196
Luviskol VA 64, 198
Luzenac Pharma, 728
Lycadex PF, 222
Lycasin 80/55, 416
Lycasin 80/55 (Roquette), 416
Lycasin HBC, 416
Lycatab C, 691
Lycatab DS, 420
Lycatab DSH, 418
Lycatab PGS, 691
Lye, 648
Lyophilization *see* Freeze-drying stabilizers/carriers
D-*lyxo*-Hexulose, 727–728

Macrogol 15 hydroxystearate, **391**
Macrogol 400, 517
Macrogol 1500, 517
Macrogol 4000, 517
Macrogol 6000, 517
Macrogol 20000, 517
Macrogol Cetostearyl Ether, 536
Macrogol ethers, 536
Macrogol Lauryl Ether, 536
Macrogol Oleyl Ether, 536
Macrogol stearate 400, 554
Macrogol stearates, 554
Macrogol Stearyl Ether, 536
Macrogola, 517
Macrogolglyceridorum caprylocaprates, 557
Macrogolglyceridorum laurates, 557
Macrogolglyceridorum linoleates, 557
Macrogolglyceridorum oleates, 557
Macrogolglyceridorum stearates, 557
Macrogolglycerol Hydroxystearate, 542
Macrogolglycerol Ricinoleate, 542
Macrogolglyceroli hydroxystearas, 542
Macrogolglyceroli ricinoleas, 542
Macrogoli 15 hydroxystearas, 391
Macrogoli aether cetostearylicus, 536
Macrogoli aether laurilicus, 536
Macrogoli aether oleicus, 536
Macrogoli aether stearylicus, 536
Macrogols, 517
Magcal, 400
Magchem 100, 400
MagGran CC, 86
Maglite, 400
Magnabrite, 393
Magnesia, 400
calcined, 400
Magnesia monoxide, 400
Magnesia usta, 400
Magnesii oxidum leve, 400
Magnesii oxidum ponderosum, 400
Magnesii stearas, 404
Magnesii subcarbonas levis, 397
Magnesii subcarbonas ponderosus, 397
Magnesii trisilicas, 408
Magnesite, 399
calcinated, 400
Magnesium aluminosilicate, 393
Magnesium aluminum silicate, 51, 55, 302, 353, 393, 403, 405, 409, 613, 730, 782, 784
activated attapulgite, 51
and propylparaben, 597
hydrated, 51
saponite, 612
Magnesium aluminum silicate, colloidal, 393
Magnesium aluminum silicate, complex colloidal, 393
Magnesium calcium silicate, hydrous, 728
Magnesium carbonate, **397**, 573
anhydrous, 399
heavy, 397
light, 397
normal, 399
Magnesium carbonate anhydrous, 397, 399
Magnesium carbonate hydroxide, 399
Magnesium carbonate, normal hydrate, 399
Magnesium distearate, 404
Magnesium hydrogen metasilicate, 728
Magnesium lauryl sulfate, 653
Magnesium mesotrisilicate, 408
Magnesium metasilicate, 403
Magnesium octadecanoate, 404
Magnesium orthosilicate, 403
Magnesium oxide, **400**, 696
heavy, 400
light, 400
Magnesium Oxide, Heavy, 400
Magnesium Oxide, Light, 400
Magnesium salt, 393
Magnesium silicate, **402**, 409, 730
hydrous, 728
synthetic, 402
Magnesium stearate, 105, 404, 418, 427, 691, 699, 794
crystalline forms, 405
dextrates, 218
incompatibilities, 531
Magnesium trisilicate, 55, 396, 403, 408, 730
and propylparaben, 597
anhydrous, 409
methylparabens incompatibility, 443
preservative inactivation, 408
Magnesium trisilicate anhydrous, **409**
Magnetite, 340
Magnyox, 400
Magsil Osmanthus, 728
Magsil Star, 728
Maize oil, 199
refined, 199
Maize starch, 690
sterilizable, 690, 695
Majsao CT, 199
Malbit, 414
Maldex, 418
Maldex G, 418
Maleic acid, **410**
Maleinic acid, 410
Malic acid, 183, 277, 411, 413, 732
DL-malic acid, 411
Malt sugar, 422
*Malta*Gran*, 418
Maltisorb, 414
Maltisorb 75/75, 416
Maltisweet 3145, 416
Maltit, 414
Maltitol, **414**, 416–417
with polydextrose, 513
Maltitol, Liquid, 416
Maltitol solution, **416**, 681
Maltitol syrup, 416
Maltitolum, 414
Maltitolum liquidum, 416
Maltobiose, 422
Maltodextrin, 222, 418, 690
Maltodextrinum, 418
Maltodiose, 422
Maltol, 257–258, 421
Maltose, 282, 422
crystalline, 423–424
dextrimaltose, 222
hydrogenated, 414
Maltose HH, 422
Maltose HHH, 422
Maltose Hydrate, 422
Maltosweet, 418
Maltrin, 418, 420
Maltrin QD, 418
Manna sugar, 424
D-mannite, 424
Mannitol, 253, 424, 681
recommended lubricants, 427
sweetness *vs.* xylitol, 789
vs. sorbitol, 427
Mannitolum, 424
Mannogem, 424
Mantrocel HP-55, 333
Mantrolac R-49, 616
Mantrolac R-52, 616
Manucol Ester, 594
Mapeg, 542
Mapico Black EC, 340
Mapico Yellow EC, 340
Mapolose, 438
Marcoat 125, 616
Margarine, oleomargarine, 721
Marine Colloids, 122
Marlosol, 554

Marlowet, 536, 542
Marmag, 400
Massa Estarinum, 722
Massupol, 722
Masurf Emulsifying Wax NF, 777
Matrix-forming agents, shellac, 616
Maydis amylum, 685
Maydis oleum raffinatum, 199
Maydol, 199
MCC Sanaq, 129
MCT, 751
MCT oil, 429
Mebeverine hydrochloride, 403, 408
Medicated confectionery bases
polydextrose, 513
sucrose, 703
see also Chewable tablet formulations
Medilave, 157
Medium-chain triglycerides, **429**, 725, 752, 763
plastics incompatibility, 430
Medophyll, 739
Meerschaum, 403
Meglumin, 431
Meglumina, 431
Meglumine, **431**
Megluminum, 431
Melibiose, 604
Melitose, 603
Melitriose, 603
Melojel, 685
p-menthan-3-ol, 433
3-*p*-menthanol, 433
Menthol, **433–435**, 740
racemic, 433–434
Menthol, Racemic, 433
Mentholum racemicum, 433
Menthomenthol, 433
Mentoli, 433
Mentolis, 433
1-Mercaptoglycerol, 454
1-mercapto-2,3-propanediol, 454
Mercuriphenyl nitrate, 496
Mercurothiolate, 736
Merigel, 691
Meritena, 685, 695
Meritol, 679
Merkur, 481
Merphenyl nitrate, 496
meso-erythritol, 251
meso-xylitol, 786
Metaboric acid, 68
Metacetonic acid, 586
meta-cresol, 204
Metagin, 441
Metallac, 793
Metaupon, 466
Metered-dose inhalant formulations, 174
CFC-free, 733
heptafluoropropane, 303
tetrafluoroethane, 733–734
see also Inhalers, dry powder diluents/carriers; Propellants
Methacrylic Acid Copolymer, 525
Methacrylic Acid Copolymer Dispersion, 525
Methacrylic acid, methyl ester, 532
Methacrylic acid polymer with divinylbenzene, 506
Methacrylic acid polymer with divinylbenzene, potassium salt, 504
Methacrylic Acid–Ethyl Acrylate Copolymer (1 : 1), 525
Methacrylic Acid–Ethyl Acrylate Copolymer (1 : 1) Dispersion 30 per cent, 525
Methacrylic Acid–Methyl Methacrylate Copolymer (1 : 1), 525
Methacrylic Acid–Methyl Methacrylate Copolymer (1 : 2), 525
Methaform, 166
Methane carboxylic acid, 5
Methanebis[*N*,*N*′ (5-ureido-2,4-diketotetrahydroimidazole)-*N*,*N*-dimethylol], 337
Methanesulfinic acid, 645
Methanol, 19
Methionine, **436–437**
Methioninum, 436
Methocel, 326, 329, 438
Methocel E Premium LV, 327
Methocel ELVP, 327
Methopectin, 478
3-methoxy-4-hydroxybenzaldehyde, 760
Methoxymethane, 235
Methyl 4-hydroxybenzoate, soluble, 444
Methyl *N*-L-α-aspartyl-L-phenylalaninate, 48
Methyl benzene-1,2-dicarboxylate, 236
Methyl carbinol, 17
Methyl cellulose, 314
Methyl Chemosept, 441
Methyl ether, 235
Methyl ethylene glycol, 592
Methyl glycol, 592
Methyl hydroxy propionate, 257
Methyl Hydroxybenzoate, 441
Methyl 4-hydroxybenzoate potassium salt, 444
Methyl 4-hydroxybenzoate sodium salt, 444
Methyl hydroxypropylcellulose, 326
Methyl isobutyl ketone, 19
Methyl lactate, 257
Methyl linoleate, 389
Methyl linolenate, 31
Methyl methacrylate, 532
Methyl methacrylate polymer, 533
Methyl 2-methylpropenoate, 532
Methyl 9-octadecenoate, 260
Methyl oleate, 260
Methyl Parahydroxybenzoate, 441
Methyl Parasept, 441
Methyl pectin, 478
Methyl pectinate, 478
Methyl polysiloxane, 233
2-methyl pyromeconic acid, 421
Methylacetic acid, 586
Methylacetic acid, sodium salt, hydrate, 661
1-methylamino-1-deoxy-D-glucitol, 431
Methylated spirit, industrial, 19
1-methylazacyclopentan-2-one, 601
N-methyl-γ-butyrolactam, 601
Methylcellulose, 266, 314–315, 324, 329, 332, 427, 438
alternatives, guar gum, 298
Methylcellulose propylene glycol ether, 326
Methylcellulosum, 438
3-methyl-4-chlorophenol, 168
6-methyl-3,4-dihydro-1,2,3-oxathiazin-4(3*H*)-one-2,2-dioxide potassium salt, 3
±-4-Methyl-1,3-dioxolan-2-one, 590
Methyldopa, 760
N,*N*″-Methylenebis{*N*′-[3-(hydroxymethyl)-2,5-dioxo-4-imidazolidinyl]urea}, 337
1,1′-methylenebis{3-[3-(hydroxymethyl)-2,5-dioxo-4-imidazolidinyl]urea}, 337
1-Methylethyl hexadecanoate, 350
1-Methylethyl tetradecanoate, 348
N-methylglucamine, 431
N-methyl-D-glucamine, 431
Methyl-4-hydroxybenzoate, 441
Methylhydroxyethylcellulose, 314
Methylhydroxyethylcellulosum, 314
1-methyl-3-hydroxy-4-isopropylbenzene, 739
Methylhydroxypropylcellulose phthalate, 333
2-methyl-3-hydroxy-4-pyrone, 421
Methylis parahydroxybenzoas, 441
5-methyl-2-isopropylphenol, 739
(1*R*,2*S*,5*R*)-(–)-5-methyl-2-(1-methylethyl)cyclohexanol, 435
(1*RS*,2*RS*,5*RS*)-(±)-5-Methyl-2-(1-methylethyl)cyclohexanol, 433
(1*S*,2*R*,5*S*)-(+)-5-Methyl-2-(1-methylethyl)cyclohexanol, 435
5-methyl-2-(1-methylethyl) phenol, 739
4-methylnorvaline, 387
6-Methyl-1,2,3-oxathiazin-4(3*H*)-one-2,2-dioxide potassium salt, 3
4-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolane, 590
Methylparaben, 80, 272, 337, 441, 598, 600
and hydroxypropyl cellulose, 320
and methylcellulose, 440
and propylene glycol, 442–443
and propylparaben, 596
see also Parabens
Methylparaben potassium, 444
Methylparaben sodium, 444
Methylphenol, 203
3-methylphenol, 204–205
2-methylpropane, 306
2-methyl-2-propenoic acid polymer with divinylbenzene, 506
2-Methyl-2-propenoic acid polymer with divinylbenzene, potassium salt, 504
Methylprotocatechuic aldehyde, 760
N-methyl-α-pyrrolidinone, 601
1-Methyl-2-pyrrolidinone, 601
N-Methylpyrrolidone, 601
N-methylpyrrolidonum, 601
Methylsulfoxide, 238
γ-methylthio-α-aminobutyric acid, 436
8-methyltocol, 33
Methyltrimethylene glycol, 77
Metolose, 326, 438
Mexpectin, 478
Meyprodor, 298
Meyprofin, 298
Meyprofleur, 146
Meyprogat, 298
MHEC, 314
MHPC, 326
Micol, 152
Micro-Cel, 101
Microcel 3E-150, 136
MicroceLac 100, 371
Microcrystalline, wax, 149
Microcrystalline cellulose, 129
and carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 132
and carrageenan, 132
and guar gum, 132
lactose, monohydrate, mixture, 371
silicified, 132
Microcrystalline Cellulose and Carboxymethylcellulose Sodium, 134
Microcrystalline Cellulose and Carmellose Sodium, 134
Microcrystalline cellulose and carrageenan, **132**
Microcrystalline cellulose and guar gum, **132**
Microcrystalline cellulose spheres, **713**
Microcrystalline wax, 475, 775, 780–781
Micromite, 86
Miglyol 808, 751–752
Miglyol 810, 429
Miglyol 812, 429
Milk acid, 355
Milk sugar, 359
Mineral jelly, 481
Mineral oil, **445**, 448–450, 483, 485
and lanolin alcohols, 448
heavy, 445
light, 447, 475, 483
light white, 447

white, 445
Mineral oil and lanolin alcohols, 447, 449, 485
Mineral oil, light, **447**
Mineral oils, 383
Mineral soap, 53
Mineral wax, 148
Mineral white, 105
Mipax, 236
Mixed soybean phosphatides, 385
MME, 532
Modified cellulose gum, 206
Modified lanolin, 379–380
Modified starch dusting powder, 695
Monestriol EN-A, 268
Monobasic potassium phosphate, 660
Monobasic sodium phosphate, 658–659
Monobasic sodium phosphate dihydrate, 659
Monobasic sodium phosphate monohydrate, 659
Monobutyl/monoethyl ester mix, of poly(methylvinyl ether/maleic acid), 534
Monocizer DBP, 225
Monododecyl sodium sulfate, 651
Monoester with 1,2,3-propanetriol, 290
Monoethanolamine, 229, 450, 755
Monoethyl ester, of poly(methylvinyl ether/maleic acid), 534
Monoethyl/monobutyl ester mix, of poly(methylvinyl ether/maleic acid), 534
Monohydrate, 364
Monolan, 506
Monolein, 288
Monomuls 90-O18, 288
Monooctadecyl ester, sodium salt, 667
Mono-olein, 288
α-mono-olein glycerol, 288
Monopotassium carbonate, 570
Monopotassium phosphate, 660
Monosodium L-(+)-ascorbate, 625
Monosodium carbonate, 629
Monosodium glutamate, **452**
Monosodium L-glutamate monohydrate, 452
Monosodium hydroxymethane sulfinate, 645
Monosodium orthophosphate, 659
Monosodium phosphate, 659
Monostearin, 290
Monothioglycerin, 454
Monothioglycerol, **454**
Monthyle, 268
Montmorillonite, 53, 393–394, 396
Montreal Protocol, 175
essential use exemptions, 175
Morflex DBS, 227
Morpan CHSA, 152
Morphans, 152
Mowiol, 564
MP, 601
MSG, 452
Mucoadhesives
chitosan, 159
ethylcellulose backing membranes, 266
glyceryl monooleate, 289
hypromellose, 326
polyethylene oxide, 522
see also Adhesives; Bioadhesives
Muriacite, 105
Myacide, 70
Mycose, 746
Mylose, 282
Myreth-*N*, 536
Myristic acid, 202, 384, 455, 457, 473
Myristic acid isopropyl ester, 348
Myristic alcohol, 456
Myristyl alcohol, 455–456
Myristyltrimethylammonium bromide, 154
Myritol, 429
Myrj 45, 555
Myvaplex 600P, 290
Myvatex, 290

NAA-160, 473
Nacol 14-95, 456
Nacol 14-98, 456
Nacol 16-95, 155–156
Nacol 18-98, 700
Nacol 18-98P, 700
Naproxen, 698
National 78-1551, 691
Native calcium sulfate, 105
NatraTaste, 48
Natrii acetas trihydricus, 620
Natrii alginas, 622
Natrii ascorbas, 625
Natrii benzoas, 627
Natrii carbonas anhydricus, 635
Natrii chloridum, 637
Natrii citras, 640
Natrii cyclamas, 643
Natrii dihydrogenophosphas dihydricus, 659
Natrii disulfis, 654
Natrii docusas, 244
Natrii glutamas, 452
Natrii hyaluronas, 646
Natrii hydrogenocarbonas, 629
Natrii hydroxidum, 648
Natrii lactatis solutio, 650
Natrii laurilsulfas, 651
Natrii metabisulfis, 654
Natrii propionas, 661
Natrii stearylis fumaras, 667
Natrii sulfis anhydricus, 669
Natrii sulfis heptahydricus, 670
Natrii tetraboras, 633
Natrii thiosulfas, 671
Natrium benzoicum, 627
Natrium thiosulfuricum, 671
Natrosol, 311
Natural alpha tocopherol, 32
Natural halite, 637
Natural red 25, 618
Natural trehalose, 746
Naturlose, 727
Neantine, 230
Neobee M5, 429
Neo-Fat, 466
Neo-fat 12, 383
Neo-fat 12–43, 383
Neohesperidin DC, 458
Neohesperidin DHC, 458
Neohesperidin dihydrochalcone, **458**
and sodium cyclamate, 644
Neohesperidin dihydrochalconum, 458
Neohesperidine dihydrochalcone, 458
Neomycin sulfate, 261
Neosorb, 679, 681
Neosorb P20/60, 680
Neosorb P30/60, 680
Neosorb P60, 680
Neosorb P60W, 680
Neosorb P100T, 680
Neotame, 50, 460, 606, 609
Neotocopherol, 33
Neotrehalose, 747
Nesatol, 429
Neusilin, 393
Nevulose, 273
NF Lactose–315, 376
NF Lactose–316 Fast Flo, 376
NHDC, 458
Nicardipine, incompatibilities, sodium bicarbonate, 631
Nikkol, 542
Ninol AA62 Extra, 383
Nipabutyl, 78
Nipacide PC, 168
Nipacide PX, 176
Nipagin A, 270
Nipagin M, 441
Nipagin P, 596
Nipanox BHA, 73
Nipanox BHT, 75
Nipantiox 1-F, 73
Nipasol M, 596
Nipasol M Sodium, 599
Nisso HPC, 317
(nitrato-O)Phenylmercury, 496
Nitratophenylmercury, 496
2,2′,2″-Nitrilotriethanol, 754
Nitrogen, 116, 461, 464
aerosol propellant, 115
Nitrogen monoxide, 463
Nitrogenium, 461
Nitrogenol, 158
Nitromethane, 503
Nitrous oxide, 116, 462–463
aerosol propellant, 115
NMP, 601
1-nonanecarboxylic acid, 384
Nonionic emulsifying wax *see* Emulsifying wax, nonionic
Nonionic surfactants *see* Surfactants, nonionic
Nonoxynol 10, 541
Non-pareil, 712
Non-pareil seeds, 712
Norfloxacin, 408
Normal human serum albumin, 14
Normal magnesium carbonate, 399
Novata, 722
Noveon AA-1, 509
Noveon CA-1, 511
Noveon CA-2, 511
Novol, 468
NSC-2752, 276
Nu-Core, 712
Nu-Pareil PG, 712
Nut oil, 476
Nu-Tab, 709
NutraSweet, 48
Nymcel ZSB, 118
Nymcel ZSC, 117
Nymcel ZSX, 206

Ocenol, 468
Octaacetylsucrose, 707
9,12-octadecadienoic acid ethyl ester, 389
9,12-Octadecadienoic acid, methyl ester, 389
(*Z*,*Z*)-9,12-Octadecadienoic acid, 389
Octadecanoic acid, 697, 699
(*Z*)-9-Octadecenoic acid, 466
Octadecanoic acid aluminum salt, 35
Octadecanoic acid, calcium salt, 103
Octadecanoic acid, 2,3-dihydroxypropyl ester mixed with 3-hydroxy-2-[(1-oxohexadecyl)-oxy] propyl octadecanoate, 293
(*Z*)-9-Octadecenoic acid, ethyl ester, 259
Octadecanoic acid, magnesium salt, 404
(*Z*)-9-octadecenoic acid, methyl ester, 260
Octadecanoic acid, monoester with 1,2,3-propanetriol, 290
Octadecanoic acid zinc salt, 793
n-octadecanol, 700
1-Octadecanol, 700
9,10-octadecenoic acid, 466
9-Octadecenoic acid (Z), monoester with 1,2,3-propanetriol, 288
9-octadecenoic acid-1,2,3-propanetriyl ester, 757

(Z)-9-Octadecen-1-ol, 468
Octadecyl alcohol, 700
Octalbin, 14
Octanoic acid, 751
n-octanoic acid glycerol triester, 751
Octildodecanol, 465
Octoil, 226
Octyl gallate, 589
Octyl 3,4,5-trihydroxybenzoate, 589
Octyldodecanol, **465**
2-octyl-1-dodecanol, 465
Octyldodecanolum, 465
2-octyldodecyl alcohol, 465
Odor-enhancing agents, menthol, 433
OHS28890, 75
Oil of vitriol, 719
Ointment bases
  coconut oil, 184
  lanolin, 378
    hydrous, 380
  lanolin alcohols, 382
  paraffin, 474
  petrolatum, 482
  petrolatum and lanolin alcohols, 484
  poloxamer, 507
  polyethylene glycol, 517
  stearic acid, 697
  vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate, 764
Okenite, 101
Olea europaea oil, 470
Oleaginous vehicles
  almond oil, 30
  canola oil, 108
  castor oil, 126
  corn oil (maize), 199
  cottonseed oil, 202
  ethyl oleate, 259
  isopropyl myristate, 348
  isopropyl palmitate, 350
  light mineral oil, 447
  mineral oil, 445
  myristyl alcohol, 456
  olive oil, 470
  peanut oil, 476
  safflower oil, 610
  sesame oil, 614
  soybean oil, 682
Oleic acid, 260, 466, 469, 733
  almond oil, 29
  and corn oil, 199
  and cottonseed oil, 202
  canola oil, 109
  castor oil, 126
  peanut oil, 476
  sunflower oil, 721–722
Oleic acid, ethyl ester, 259
Oleic alcohol, 468
Olein, 757
Oleinic acid, 466
Oleo alcohol, 468
Oleo de amêndoas, 29
Oleol, 468
Oleomargarine, 721
Oleoyl Macrogolglycerides, 557
Oleoyl Polyoxylglycerides, 557
Oleum, 720
Oleum cacao, 725
Oleum cocois, 184
Oleum helianthi, 721
Oleum neutrale, 429
Oleum olivae, 470
Oleum ricini, 126
Oleum theobromatis, 725
Oleum vegetable tenue, 429
Oleyl alcohol, **468**
Oleyl oleate, 469
Oligofructose, 339
Oligosaccharides, cyclic, 210
Olio di mandorla, 29
Olivae oleum raffinatum, 470
Olive oil, 185, 470
  alternatives, rapeseed oil, 109
  extra virgin, 471
  fine virgin, 471
  lampante virgin, 471
  pure, 470
  refined, 470
  virgin, 471
Olive Oil, Refined, 470
Olive-pomace oil, 471–472
Opacifing agents, calcium carbonate, 86
Opacifying agent, ceresin, 148
Opacifying agents
  aluminum stearate, 35
  calcium silicate, 101
  coloring agents, 189
  ethylene glycol palmitostearate, 267
  octyldodecanol, 465
  titanium oxide, 741
  zinc acetate, 791
  zinc stearate, 793
Opadry, 329
Opaglos R, 616
Opaseal, 562
Optim, 283
Orafti, 339
Oraldene, 304
Organic bases, meglumine, 431
[Orthoborato(3-)-O]-phenylmercurate(2-)dihydrogen, 494
Orthoboric acid, 68
Orthophosphoric acid, 503
Oryzae amylum, 685
Osmotic agents, sulfobutyletherβ-cyclodextrin, 714
Overloading syndrome, 203
Ovolecithin, 385
3-oxo-L-gulofuranolactone, enol form, 43
3-oxo-L-gulofuranolactone 6-palmitate, 46
3-oxo-L-gulofuranolactone sodium enolate, 625
2-[(1-oxohexadecyl)-oxy]-1,3-propanediyl dioctadecanoate and 1,2,3-propane triol, 293
2-oxopyrrolidine, 600
Oxybenzene, 485
Oxybismethane, 235
Oxycellulose, 311
Oxymag, 400
Oxypropylated cellulose, 317, 322
Ozokerite
  purified, 148
  substitute for, 148

P-22, 172, 303
P-152a, 232
Padil, 295
Pal Sweet, 48
Pal Sweet Diet, 48
Palatinit, 342
Palatinol A, 230
Palatinol C, 225
Palatinol M, 236
Palatinose, hydrogenated, 342
Palatone, 421
Palm kernel oil PEG 300 esters, hydrogenated, 557
Palm oil, 109
  hydrogenated, 762
Palm oil PEG 1500 esters, hydrogenated, 557
Palmitic acid, 318, 384, 455, 457, 473
  almond oil, 29
  and corn oil, 199
  and cottonseed oil, 202
  castor oil, 126
  peanut oil, 476
  purified stearic acid, 699
  sunflower oil, 721
Palmitic acid isopropyl ester, 350
Palmitic acid sodium salt, 473
Palmitin, 473
Palmityl alcohol, 155
Palygorscite, 51
Palygorskite, 51
Pamolyn, 389
Panasate 800, 751
Parabens, 337, 403
  antimicrobial activity, and chain length, 442
  incompatibilities
    methylcellulose, 440
    nonionic surfactants, 443
    phenylethyl alcohol, 491
    poloxamer, 507
    polyethylene alkyl ethers, 537
    polyethylene glycols, 520
    polysorbates, 551
  paraben paradox, 444
  synergists, 247
  see also Butylparaben; Ethylparaben; Methylparaben; Propylparaben
Paracetamol, 403, 408, 478
Parachlorometacresol, 168
Parachlorometaxylenol, 176
Paraffin, 447–448, 474, 483, 485, 776, 780–781
  anhydrous ointment bases, 771
  hard, 474
  light liquid, 447
  liquid, 445
    and lanolin alcohols, 449
  synthetic, 475
  white soft, 483
    and anionic emulsifying wax, 771
  yellow soft, 481
Paraffin, Hard, 474
Paraffin, Liquid, 445
Paraffin oil, 445
Paraffin wax, 474, 775
  substitute for, 148
Paraffin, Yellow Soft, 481
Paraffinum durum, 474
Paraffinum liquidum, 445
Paraffinum perliquidum, 447
Paraffinum solidum, 474
Parasepiolite, 403
Parasept, 599
Paselli MD10 PH, 418
Patlac, 650
Patlac LA, 355
P-142b, 171
PCMC, 168
PCMX, 176
PDLLA, 515
PEA, 490
Peanut oil, 30, 109, 185, 200, 203, 259, 476, 611, 615, 682, 684, 722
Pearl, 685
Pearl Steric, 697
Pearling agents, ethylene glycol palmitostearate, 267
Pearlitol, 424
Peceol, 288
Pectin, **478**
Pectina, 478
Pectinic acid, 478
PEG, 517
PEG 400 caprylic/capric glycerides, 557
PEG fatty acid esters, 554
PEG *see* Poly(ethylene glycol

PEG stearates, 554
Peglicol-5-oleate, 557
Pemulen, 110
Penetration enhancers
alcohol, 17
dimethyl sulfoxide, 238–239
glyceryl monooleate, 289
glycofurol, 297
isopropyl myristate, 348
isopropyl palmitate, 350
lanolin, 379
light mineral oil, 448
linoleic acid, 389
menthol, 433
myristic acid, 455
myristyl alcohol, 456
oleic acid, 466
oleyl alcohol, 468
palmitic acid, 473
polyoxyethylene alkyl ethers, 536
polyoxylglycerides, 558
pyrrolidone, 600
sodium lauryl sulfate, 651
thymol, 739
tricaprylin, 751, 753
triolein, 757
see also Transdermal delivery agents
Penicillin V, 299
Pentacarboxymethyl diethylenetriamine, 480
Pentacin, 481
1-pentadecanecarboxylic acid, 473
1,3-pentadiene-1-carboxylic acid, 672
(3*S*,4*S*,5*R*)-1,3,4,5,6-pentahydroxyhexan-2-one, 727
Pentasodium DTPA, 481
Pentasodium pentetate, 481
Pentetate calcium trisodium, 481
Pentetate pentasodium, 481
Pentetate zinc trisodium, 481
Pentetic acid, **480**
Pentonium, 56
PEO *see* Poly(ethylene oxide)
Peppermint camphor, 433
Peppermint oil, 434
Perfectamyl, 685
Perfume fixatives, diethyl phthalate, 230
Periclase, 400
Permulgin D, 777
Persian tragacanth, 744
Petrohol, 346
Petrolatum, 447–448, 475, 481, 484–485
and lanolin alcohols, 382, 450, 483–484
and wool alcohols, 484
light liquid, 447
white, 483, 485
yellow, 485
Petrolatum and lanolin alcohols, 383, 484
Petrolatum and wool alcohols, 484
Petroleum ceresin, 775
Petroleum jelly, 481
white, 483
Petroleum wax (microcrystalline), 775
PH-adjusting agents
ammonia solution, 39
diethanolamine, 228
glacial acetic acid, 6
meglumine, 432
sodium citrate dihydrate, 640
sodium hydroxide, 648
see also Acidifying agents; Alkalizing agents; Buffering agents
Pharma-Carb, 86
Pharmacel, 129
Pharmacel XL, 206
Pharmaceutical glaze, 618
Pharmacoat, 326–327
Pharma-Gel, 691
Pharmasolve, 601
Pharmasorb, 393
Pharmatose, 364
Pharmsorb Regular, 51
Phe-Mer-Nite, 496
Phenethanol, 490
Phenic acid, 485
Phenobarbital sodium, 398
Phenol, 204, 450, 484–485
incompatibilities
carbomers, 112
nonionic emulsifying wax, 777
poloxamer, 507
polyoxyethylene castor oil derivatives, 544
liquefied, 487
Phenolum, 485
Phenoxen, 488
Phenoxetol, 488
Phenoxyethanol, 167, 488
2-Phenoxyethanol, 488
Phenoxyethanolum, 488
β-phenoxyethyl alcohol, 488
Phenoxypropanol, 489
1-Phenoxypropan-2-ol, 489
Phenyl Cellosolve, 488
Phenyl hydrate, 485
Phenyl hydroxide, 485
L-phenylalanine, *N*-[*N*-(3,3-dimethylbutyl)-L-α-aspartyl]-1-methyl ester, 460
Phenylcarbinol, 64
Phenylcarboxylic acid, 61
2-Phenylethanol, 169, 490
2-Phenylethanol, 490
Phenylethyl alcohol, 167, 490
2-phenylethyl alcohol, 490
Phenylformic acid, 61
Phenylhydrargyri acetas, 492
Phenylhydrargyri boras, 494
Phenylhydrargyri nitras, 496
Phenylic acid, 485
Phenylic alcohol, 485
Phenylmercuriborate, 494
Phenylmercuric acetate, **492**, 494–496, 498, 738
Phenylmercuric borate, 492–494, 496, 498, 738
Phenylmercuric hydroxide, 494, 496
Phenylmercuric metaborate, 494
Phenylmercuric nitrate, 247, 492–496, 738
Phenylmercuric orthoborate, 494
Phenylmercury acetate, 492
Phenylmercury borate, 494
Phenylmercury nitrate, 496
Phenylmethanol, 64
Phenylmethyl benzoate, 66
Phenytoin, 353
Phosal 53 MCT, 385
Phosphatides, 499
mixed soybean, 385
Phosphatidic acid, 499
Phosphatidylcholine, 385, 499
Phosphatidylethanolamine, 499
Phosphatidylglycerol, 499
Phosphatidylinositol, 499
Phosphatidylserine, 499
Phosphoglycerides, 499
PhospholLipid, 499
Phospholipids, **499**
solvents, glycerin monostearate, 290
soybean, 385
Phospholipon 100 H, 385
Phosphoric acid, **503**
dilute, 504
diluted, 504
Phosphoric acid calcium salt (1 : 1), 94, 99
Phosphoric acid calcium salt (1 : 1) dihydrate, 96
Phosphoric Acid, Concentrated, 503
Phosphoric acid, disodium salt, 656
Phosphoric acid, monosodium salt, 659
Phosphorite, 657
Photostabilizers, vanillin, 760
Phthalavin, 562
Phthalic acid, 562–563
Phthalic acid dibutyl ester, 225
Phthalic acid diethyl ester, 230
Phthalic acid dimethyl ester, 236
Phthalic acid methyl ester, 236
Phycite, 251
Pigment black 11, 340
Pigment red 101, 340
Pigment white 6, 741
Pigment yellow 42, 340
Pigments, 189
classifications, 189
dispersing agents, glycerin monostearate, 290
titanium oxide, 741, 743
see also Coloring agents
Piotine, 612
Pisi amylum, 685
Plasbumin, 14
Plasdone, 581
Plasdone S-630, 196, 198
Plasma albumin, 14
Plaster of Paris, 105, 107
Plasticizers
acetyltributyl citrate, 8, 756
acetyltriethyl citrate, 10, 756
benzyl benzoate, 67
cellulose acetate phthalate compatible, 144–145
chlorbutanol, 166
dextrin, 220
dibutyl phthalate, 225
dibutyl sebacate, 227
diethyl phthalate, 230
dimethyl phthalate, 236
glycerin, 283
glycerin monostearate, 290
hypromellose phthalate compatible, 333
mannitol, 424
mineral oil and lanolin alcohols, 449
palmitic acid, 318
petrolatum and lanolin alcohols, 484
polyethylene glycol, 517
polymethacrylate compatible, 533
polyvinyl acetate phthalate, 562
propylene glycol, 592
pyrrolidone, 600
sorbitol, 679
stearic acid, 318
triacetin, 748
tributyl citrate, 749, 756
triethanolamine, 754
triethyl citrate, 756
PLGA *see* Poly(L-lactide-co-glycolide
Pluracare, 508
Plurafac, 536
Pluriol E, 517
Pluronic, 506, 508
Pluronic F-68, 508
PMA, 492
PMAC, 492
PMAS, 492
PMB, 494
PMMA, 533
PMN, 496
Polacrilin, 506
Polacrilin potassium, **504**
Polacrilin resin, 505
Polacrilinum kalii, 504
Polargel, 53

Polawax, 777
Polishing agents
yellow wax, 780
see also Coating agents
Poloxalkol, 506
Poloxamer, **506**
Poloxamer 188, 507
Poloxamer 338, 507
Poloxamer 407, 507
Poloxamera, 506
Poloxamers, 506
nomenclature, 508
Poloxyl 8 stearate, 554
Poly (*RS*)-2-hydroxypropanoic acid, 515
Polyacrylate Dispersion (30 per cent), 525
Polyacrylatis dispersio 30 per centum, 525
Polyacrylic acid, 110
Poly(alcohol vinylicus), 564
Poly-β-(1,4)-2-Amino-2-deoxy-D-glucose, 159
Polycarbophil, 113, 509
Polycizer DBP, 225
Polydextrose, 224, 513, 789
Polydextrose A, 513
Polydextrose K, 513
Polydextrose *see also* Dextrose
Poly(dimethylsiloxane), 233
Polydimethylsiloxane–silicon dioxide mixture, 619
Poly(DL-lactide), 515
Polyesters, aliphatic, 23
Polyethoxylated castor oil, 542
Polyethylene glycol, 392, 517, 524, 553, 556, 725
incompatibilities, sorbitol, 680
Polyethylene glycol 660 12-hydroxystearate, 391
Polyethylene glycol distearate, 554
Polyethylene glycol monocetyl ether, 536
Polyethylene glycol monolauryl ether, 536
Polyethylene glycol monooleyl ether, 536
Polyethylene glycol monostearyl ether, 536
Poly(ethylene glycol (PEG), 516
Polyethylene glycol stearate, 554
Polyethylene glycol stearates, 554
Polyethylene glycol-15-hydroxystearate, 391
Polyethylene oxide, 521–522
Poly(ethylene oxide) (PEO), 516
Poly(ethylene-*co*-vinyl acetate), 268
Polyethylene–propylene glycol copolymer, 506
Polyfructose, 339
Poly-(1,4-β-D-glucopyranosamine), 159
β-1,4-poly-D-glucosamine, 159
D,L-polylactic acid, 515
Polylactic acids, 356
Polylactide, 515
Polylactide acetyltributyl citrate, 9
Poly(L-lactide-co-glycolide (PLGA), 516
Polylin No. 515, 389
Polymannuronic acid, 20
Polymeric methacrylates, 525
Polymers, biodegradable, aliphatic polyesters, 23, 27
Polymers acrylic acid *see* Carbomer
Polymethacrylates, **525**, 563
compatible plasticizers, 533
Poly(methyl methacrylate), 532–533
Poly(methyl vinyl ether/maleic anhydride), **534**
Poly(methylvinyl ether/maleic acid), 534
Poly(methylvinyl ether/maleic anhydride), 534
Polyox, 522
Polyoxiante, 522
Polyoxirane, 522
Poly[1-(2-oxo-1-pyrrolidinyl)ethylene], 581
Poly(oxy-1,2-ethanediyl) α-hydro-ω-hydroxyoctadecanoate, 554
Polyoxyethylene, 522
Polyoxyethylene 8 stearate, 554
Polyoxyethylene alkyl ethers, 521, 536, 548, 778
nomenclature, 536
Polyoxyethylene castor oil derivatives, **542**
Polyoxyethylene glycol, 517
Polyoxyethylene glycol 400 stearate, 554
Polyoxyethylene glycol stearates, 554
Polyoxyethylene lauryl alcohol ether, 536
Polyoxyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters, 521, 549, 678
Polyoxyethylene stearates, 521, 548, 554, 699
nomenclature, 554
Polyoxyethylene–polyoxypropylene copolymer, 506
Polyoxyl 10 Oleyl Ether, 536
Polyoxyl 20 Cetostearyl Ether, 536
Polyoxyl 35 castor oil, 542
Polyoxyl 40 hydrogenated castor oil, 543
Polyoxyl 40 Stearate, 554
Polyoxyl lanolin, 380
Polyoxyl Lauryl Ether, 536
Polyoxyl Stearyl Ether, 536
Polyoxylglycerides, **557**
Poly[oxy(1-methyl-2-oxo-1,2-ethanediyl)], 515
Polyplasdone XL, 208
Polyplasdone XL-10, 208
Polypropylene glycol 2000, 543
Polysaccharide B-1459, 782
Polysorbate 20, 549
Polysorbate 40, 549
Polysorbate 60, 549
Polysorbate 80, 443, 549
Polysorbates, incompatibilities, phenylethyl alcohol, 491
Polysorbatum 20, 60, and 80, 549
Polythiazide, 760
Polyvidone, 581
Polyvinol, 564
Polyvinyl acetate phthalate, 145, 562
Polyvinyl alcohol, **564**
Poly(vinyl alcohol) (PVA), 516
Polyvinylpolypyrrolidone, 208
Polyvinylpyrrolidone, 581
Poly(vinylpyrrolidone) (PVP), 516
Poly(1-vinylpyrrolidone-co-vinyl acetate), 196
Polyvinylpyrrolidone-vinyl acetate copolymer, 196
Poorly crystalline boehmite, 34
Porcelain clay, 352
Potash alum, 567
Potash lye, 576
Potassium acid carbonate, 570
Potassium acid phosphate, 660
Potassium acid sulfite, 578
Potassium alginate, 21, 41, 84, 566, 624
Potassium alum, **567**
Potassium aluminum sulfate (1 : 1 : 2), 567
Potassium aluminum sulfate-12-hydrate, 567
Potassium benzoate, 62, 569, 629
Potassium bicarbonate, **570**, 632
Potassium biphosphate, 660
Potassium 1,4-bis(2-ethylhexyl) sulfosuccinate, 246
Potassium bisulfite, 578
Potassium bisulphite, 578
Potassium chloride, **572**, 639
Potassium citrate, **574**
anhydrous, 575
monohydrate, 575
Potassium dihydrogen orthophosphate, 660
Potassium (*E*,*E*)-hexa-2,4-dienoate, 579
Potassium (*E*,*E*)-sorbate, 579
Potassium ethyl hydroxybenzoate, 272
Potassium hydrate, 576
Potassium Hydrogen Carbonate, 570
Potassium hydrogen sulfite, 578
Potassium hydroxide, 92, 576, 649
Potassium metabisulfite, **577**, 655, 718
Potassium Metabisulphite, 577
Potassium methyl hydroxybenzoate, 444
Potassium 6-methyl-2,2-dioxo-oxathiazin-4-olate, 3
Potassium monochloride, 572
Potassium myristate, 455–457
Potassium phosphate, 658
dibasic, 658
monobasic, 660
Potassium polymannuronate, 566
Potassium propionate, 662
Potassium propyl hydroxybenzoate, 598
Potassium pyrosulfite, 577
Potassium salt trihydrate, 569
Potassium sorbate, **579**, 674
Povidone, 198, 210, 373, 427, 581
and fructose, 273
and lactose, monohydrate, mixture, 373
crosslinked, 208
incompatibilities, polyvinyl acetate phthalate, 563
Povidone-iodine, 585
Povidonum, 581
Povipharm, 581
Powdered cellulose, 132, 136
and lactose, monohydrate, mixture, 374
Powdered fructose, 275
Powdered sugar, 710
Powdered talc, 728
Powdered tragacanth, 745
Precipitated calcium phosphate, 99
Precipitated calcium sulfate, 105
Precipitated carbonate of lime, 86
Precipitated chalk, 86
Precirol ATO 5, 293
Pregelatinised Starch, 691
Pregelatinized starch, 88, 665, 690–691, 696
and corn starch, mixture, 200
Prejel, 691
Preservatives
alcohol, 17
benzalkonium chloride, 56
benzethonium chloride, 59–60
benzoic acid, 61
benzyl alcohol, 64
boric acid, 68
bronopol, 70
butylated hydroxyanisole, 73
butylene glycol, 77
butylparaben, 78, 80
calcium acetate, 82
calcium chloride, 89
calcium lactate, 92
carbon dioxide, 115
cationic, and bentonite, 54
cetrimide, 152
cetylpyridinium chloride, 157
chlorhexidine, 162
chlorobutanol, 166
chlorocresol, 168–169
chloroxylenol, 176
citric acid monohydrate, 181
cresol, 203–204
dimethyl ether, 236
ethylparaben, 270–271
glycerin, 283
hexetidine, 304
imidurea, 337
inactivation by magnesium trisilicate, 408
isopropyl alcohol, 346
lactic acid, 355
methylparaben, 337, 441
monothioglycerol, 454

parabens, 337
alkyl chain length, 442
pentetic acid, 480
phenol, 485
phenoxyethanol, 488–489
phenylethyl alcohol, 490
phenylmercuric acetate, 492
phenylmercuric borate, 494–495
phenylmercuric nitrate, 496–498
potassium benzoate, 569
potassium metabisulfite, 577
potassium sorbate, 579–580
propionic acid, 586
propyl gallate, 588
propylene glycol, 592
propylparaben, 337, 596–597
propylparaben sodium, 599
sodium acetate, 620
sodium benzoate, 627
sodium borate, 633
sodium lactate, 650
sodium metabisulfite, 654
sodium propionate, 661
sodium sulfite, 669
sorbic acid, 672
sulfobutyletherβ-cyclodextrin, 714
sulfur dioxide, 718
synergists, edetic acid, 247–248
thimerosal, 736
xanthan gum incompatibility, 783
xylitol, 786
see also Antibacterial agents; Antifungal agents; Antioxidants
Pretiox AV-01-FG, 741
Pricerine, 283
Primary sodium phosphate, 659
Primellose, 206
Primogran W, 220
Primojel, 663
Printing inks, pharmaceutical, shellac, 616
Priolene, 466
Priolube 1408, 288
PrismaLac, 364
Pristacin, 157
Pristerene, 697
ProBenz PG, 569
Pro-Bumin, 14
Procipient, 238–239
Procol, 536
Profoam, 594
Progallin P, 587
Proguanil, 408
ProKote LSC, 385
Prolamins, zein, 790
Promethazine hydrochloride, 672
Pronova, 594
Propagin, 596
Propal, 350
Propan-1-ol, 347
Propan-2-ol, 346
Propane, 306
Propane-1,2,3-triol, glycerin solutions, 285
Propane-1,2-diol, 592
1,2-Propanediol, 592
Propane-1,2-diol alginate, 594
1,2-propanediol cyclic carbonate, 590
1,2,3-Propanetricarboxylic acid, 2-acetyloxy, tributyl ester, 8
1,2,3-Propanetricarboxylic acid, 2-acetyloxy, triethyl ester, 10
1,2,3-Propanetricarboxylic acid, 2-hydroxy, tributyl ester, 749
Propane-1,2,3-triol, 283
1,2,3-propanetriol, 283
1,2,3-propanetriol octadecanoate, 290
1,2,3-Propanetriol triacetate, 748
1,2,3-propanetriyl ester, 751
1,2,3-propanetriyl tris((*E*)-9-octadecenoate), 757
Propanoic acid, 586, 662
Propanoic acid, calcium salt, 662
Propanoic acid 2-hydroxy butyl ester, 257
Propanoic acid, 2-hydroxy-, calcium salt (2:1), hydrate, 92
Propanoic acid 2-hydroxy-ethyl ester, 256
RS-propanoic acid, 2-hydroxy-, homopolymer, 515
Propanoic acid, potassium salt, 662
Propanoic acid, sodium salt, anhydrous, 662
Propanoic acid, zinc salt, 662
Propan-2-ol, 346–347
2-propanol, 346
2-Propanone, 7, 458
Propellant 22, 172, 303
Propellant 11(trichloromonofluoromethane), 173
Propellant 12 (dichlorodifluoromethane), 173, 175
Propellant 114 (dichlorotetrafluoroethane), 173, 175
Propellant 152a, 232, 733
Propellant 142b, 171
Propellants
butane, 306
carbon dioxide, 115–116
chlorodifluoroethane, 171
chlorodifluoromethane, 172
chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), 173–174
difluoroethane, 232
dimethyl ether, 235
fluorocarbon nomenclature, 175
heptafluoropropane, 303
hydrocarbons, 306
isobutane, 306
nitrogen, 115, 461
nitrous oxide, 115, 463
propane, 306
solubility enhancers, polyoxyl 40 hydrogenated castor oil, 543
tetrafluoroethane, 733–734
2-propenylacrylic acid, 672
Propionic acid, **586**, 662
Propionic acid, calcium salt, 662
Propionic acid, potassium salt, 662
Propionic acid, sodium salt, anhydrous, 661
Propionic acid, sodium salt, hydrate, 661
Propionic acid, zinc salt, 662
Propyl alcohol, 347
Propyl Aseptoform, 596
Propyl butex, 596
Propyl Chemosept, 596
Propyl gallate, 200, 587
ethyl oleate, 259
Propyl hydride, 306
Propyl Hydroxybenzoate, 596
Propyl 4-hydroxybenzoate potassium salt, 598
Propyl 4-hydroxybenzoate, sodium salt, 599
Propyl Parahydroxybenzoate, 596
Propyl Parasept, 596
Propyl 3,4,5-trihydroxybenzoate, 587
Propylene carbonate, **590–591**
1,2-propylene carbonate, 590
Propylene glycol, 77, 592, 595
and methylparabens, 442–443
Propylene glycol alginate, 21, 41, 84, 567, 593–594, 624
Propylenglycolum, 592
Propylic alcohol, 347
Propylis gallas, 587
Propylis parahydroxybenzoas, 596
Propylis parahydroxybenzoas natricus, 599
Propylparaben, 80, 272, 444, 596, 600
and hydroxypropyl cellulose, 320
and methylcellulose, 440
and methylparabens, 442
see also Parabens
Propylparaben potassium, 598
Propylparaben sodium, 598–599
Proserum, 14
ProSolv, 139
Protachem, 542
Protachem GMS-450, 290
Protachem IPP, 350
Protachem MST, 774
Protacid, 20
Protalan anhydrous, 378
Protalan M-16, 449
Protalan M-26, 449
Protanal, 594, 622
Protoenstatite, 403
Pruv, 667
Pseudoacetic acid, 586
Pseudoboehmite, 34
Purac 88 PH, 355
Puracal, 92
Puracal PP, 93
Purasal, 650
Purasolv BL, 257
Purasolv EL, 256
Purasolv ML, 257
Pure olive oil, 470
Pure-Bind, 690
Pureco 76, 184
Pure-Coat, 690
Pure-Dent, 685
Pure-Dent B851, 695
Pure-Gel, 690
Pure-Set, 690
Purified bentonite, 55
Purified egg yolk PC, 499
Purified French chalk, 728
Purified lanolin, 378
Purified ozokerite, 148
Purified stearic acid, 699
Purified water, 766, 769
Purity 21, 685
Purity 826, 685
Purtalc, 728
PVA, 564
PVA *see* Poly(vinyl alcohol)
PVAP, 562
PVP, 581
PVP *see* Poly(vinylpyrrolidone)
PVP/VA, 196
PVP/VA copolymer, 196
PX 104, 225
Pyrisept, 157
Pyroacetic ether, 7
Pyroborax, 634
2-Pyrol, 600
α-pyrrolidinone, 600
2-Pyrrolidinone, 600
Pyrrolidone, **600**
2-pyrrolidone, 600
Pyrrolidonum, 600

Quammonium, 152
Quassin, 217
Quaternary ammonium compounds
benzalkonium chloride, 56
benzethonium chloride, 59
cetrimide, 152
imidurea, 337
incompatibilities
anionic emulsifying wax, 771
nonionic emulsifying wax, 777
talc, 729
Quaternium 18-hectorite, 302

R-227, 303
Racementhol, 433
Racemic lactic acid, 355
Racemic menthol, 433–434
Raffinerad, 610
Raffinose, **603**
Raftiline, 339
Rapae oleum raffinatum, 108
Rape oil, 109
Rapeseed oil, 109
  alternatives, olive oil, 109
  erucic acid, 108–109
Rapeseed Oil, Refined, 108
Rayon, 748
RC Plasticizer DBP, 225
Red ferric oxide, 340
Refined almond oil, 30
Refined coconut oil, 184
Refined corn oil, 199
Refined cottonseed oil, 202
Refined olive-pomace oil, 471
Refined sugar, 703
Refined sunflower oil, 721
Refined wax, 780
Refined wool fat, 378
Refrigerant 22, 172
Refrigerant 152a, 232, 733
Refrigerant 142b, 171
Refrigerants
  dimethyl ether, 235
  refrigerant 22, 172
  refrigerant 134a, 733
  refrigerant 142b, 171
  refrigerant 152a, 232
  tetrafluoroethane, 733
Rehydragel, 34
Rehydraphos, 38
Renex, 536
Repeftal, 236
Resorcinol, 450, 484
Respitose, 362
RH 60, 543
Rheology modifiers, carbomers, 110
Rhodiarome, 261
Rhodicare S, 782
Rhodigel, 782
Rhovanil, 760
Riboflavin, 51
*Rice*Trin*, 418
Ricini oleum hydrogenatum, 128
Ricini oleum virginale, 126
Ricinoleic acid, 126
Ricinoleum, 126
Ricinus communis, 126
Ricinus oil, 126
Rimso-50, 238
Rita CA, 155
Rita GMS, 290
RITA HA C-1-C, 646
Rita IPM, 348
Rita IPP, 350
Rita SA, 700
Ritaceti, 774
Ritachol 2000, 777
Ritachol SS, 774
Ritalac NAL, 650
Ritawax, 382
Ritoleth, 536
Ritox, 536
Rock alum, 567
Rock salt, 637
Roclys, 282
Roferose, 222
Rofetan GTC, 751–752
Rongalite, 645
Roquette *(Lycasin 80/55)*, 416
Ross Ceresine Wax, 148
Rubbing alcohol, 346
Rubefacients, ammonia solution, 40
Rutile, 743
Rutile titanium dioxide, 741

SA-99, 625
Sacarina, 605
Saccarina, 605
Sacchari sphaerae, 712
Saccharin, 29, 605, 609
  and sodium cyclamate, 643
  insoluble, 605
  soluble, 608
  sweetness *vs* neohesperidin dihydrochalcone, 458
  sweetness *vs*. sucrose, 605
Saccharin ammonium, 606–607
Saccharin calcium, 606–607
Saccharin insoluble, 605
Saccharin sodium, 29, 606, 608
  sweetness *vs*. sucrose, 608
Saccharin Sodium Hydrate, 608
Saccharinum, 605
Saccharinum natricum, 608
Saccharose, 703
Saccharosonic acid, 250
Saccharum, 703
Saccharum lactis, 359
SacheLac, 364
Safflorolja, 610
Safflower glycerides, 611
Safflower oil, **610**
  refined, 610
Safflower Oil, Refined, 610
Safflower oil (unhydrogenated), 610
Saflonoljy puhdistettu, 610
Sal ammoniac, 42
Sal de Vichy, 629
Salicylic acid, 412
Saline, 637
Salmiac, 42
Salt, 637
Sanacel, 136
Sanacel Pharma, 136
Sancel-W, 136
Sanecta, 48
Saponite, 302, 393–394, 396, 612
SAS, 185
Sassolite, 69
Satialgine H8, 20
Satin spar, 105
Satinite, 105
(SBE), 714
SBE7-β-CD, 714
Scabies, treatment of, 67
Schardinger dextrin, 210
SCMC, 118
SDS, 651
SDS (sodium dodecyl sulfate), 651
Sea salt, 637
SeaSpen PF, 122
Sebacic acid, 276
Secondary calcium phosphate, 94, 96
Secondary sodium phosphate, 656
Sec-propyl alcohol, 346
Sedaform, 166
Selenite, 105
Self-emulsifying glyceryl monostearate, 292
Semisynthetic glycerides, 722
Sentry, 233
Sentry Simethicone, 619
Sepifilm SN, 616
Sepiolite, 403
Sepistab ST 200, 692, 694
Sepistab ST200, 691, 694
Seprison, 158
Sequestering agents
  calcium acetate, 82
  citric acid, 73
  citric acid monohydrate, 181
  dibasic sodium phosphate, 656
  hydroxpropyl betadex, 316
  monobasic sodium phosphate, 659
  pentetic acid, 480
  phosphoric acid, 503
  potassium citrate, 574
  sodium citrate dihydrate, 640
  tartaric acid, 731
Sequestrene AA, 247
Sequestrene NA3, 249
Sequestrene NA4, 249
Serum albumin, 14
Sesame oil, 30, 109, 185, 200, 203, 477, 611, 614, 684, 722
  refined, 614
Sesame Oil, Refined, 614
Sesami oleum raffinatum, 614
SHCa-1, 301
Shellac, 562–563, 616
  purified, 616
  white, 616
  with stearic acid, 697
Shellac ammonium salt, 618
Shellactypes of, 616
Shogun CT, 682
Sicovit B80, 340
Sicovit B85, 340
Sicovit R30, 340
Sicovit Y10, 340
Silane, dichloro-dimethyl-, reaction products with silica, 309
Silica, 185
  colloidal, 185
    hydrophobic, 309
  fumed, 185
Silica, Colloidal Anhydrous, 185
Silica colloidalis anhydrica, 185
Silica dimethyl silylate, 309
Silica, Hydrophobic Colloidal, 309
Silica hydrophobica colloidalis, 309
Silica sol, 185
Silicic acid, 393
Silicic acid, calcium salt, 101
Silicic acid, magnesium salt, 402
Silicic acid, magnesium salt (1 : 2), hydrate, 408
Silicic acid, silylated, 309
Silicic anhydride, 185
Silicified microcrystalline cellulose, 132, 139
Silicon dioxide
  and fructose, 275
  colloidal, 139–140, 185
  fumed, 185
Silicon dioxide colloidal, 185
Silicon dioxide fumed, 185
Silicon dioxide, silanated, 309
Silicones, cyclomethicone, 215
Silicosis, 353
Silkolene, 481
Siloxanes, 215
  dimethicone, 233
Sim 90, 352
Simethicone, 216, 233–234, 619
Simeticone, 619
Simeticonum, 619
Simulsol, 542
Sirius, 445
Skin-penetration enhancers *see* Penetration enhancers; Transdermal delivery agents
Slaked lime, 91
SLS, 651
Snow White, 105, 481

Soap clay, 53
Soapstone, 728
Sobenate, 627
Soda ash, 635
Soda calcined, 635
Soda lye, 648
Sodii benzoas, 627
Sodium acetate, 5, 83, 620, 708
Sodium acetate anhydrous, 620
Sodium Acetate Hydrate, 620
Sodium Acetate Trihydrate, 620
Sodium Acetate Trihydrates, 620
Sodium acid carbonate, 629
Sodium acid sulfite, 654
Sodium alginate, 21, 41, 84, 567, 595, 622
methylparabens incompatibility, 443
Sodium ascorbate, 45, 47, 625
Sodium benzoate, 62, 570, 627
alternatives to, 569
Sodium benzoic acid, 627
Sodium biborate decahydrate, 633
Sodium bicarbonate, 571, 629, 636
alternatives, potassium bicarbonate, 570
citric acid neutralization, 632
tartaric acid neutralization, 632
Sodium biphosphate, 659
Sodium 1,4-bis(2-ethylhexyl) sulfosuccinate, 244
Sodium 1,4-bis[(2-ethylhexyl)oxy]-1,4-dioxobutane-2-sulfonate, 244
Sodium bisulfite, 655
Sodium borate, 69, 633
fused, 634
Sodium borate anhydrous, 634
Sodium bromide, 153
Sodium butyl hydroxybenzoate, 80
Sodium calciumedetate, 248
Sodium carbonate, **635**
Sodium Carbonate, Anhydrous, 635
Sodium carbonate decahydrate, 635–636
Sodium carbonate monohydrate, 635–636
Sodium carboxymethyl guar, 300
Sodium carboxymethyl starch, 663
Sodium carboxymethylcellulose, 118
Sodium cellulose glycolate, 118
Sodium chloride, 573, 637
Sodium Citrate, 640
Sodium citrate anhydrous, 642
Sodium citrate dihydrate, 183, 640
Sodium Citrate Hydrate, 640
Sodium citrate tertiary, 640
Sodium cyclamate, 29, 606, 643
and saccharin, 643
sweetness *vs.* sucrose, 643
with acesulfame potassium, 644
with saccharin sodium, 644
Sodium cyclohexanesulfamate, 643
Sodium *N*-cyclohexylsulfamate, 643
Sodium dihydrogen orthophosphate, 659
Sodium dihydrogen phosphate, 659
anhydrous, 659
Sodium Dihydrogen Phosphate Dihydrate, 659
Sodium Dihydrogen Phosphate Monohydrate, 659
Sodium dioctyl sulfosuccinate, 244
Sodium dodecyl sulfate, 651
Sodium DTPA, 481
Sodium edetate, 248–249
Sodium (*E*,*E*)-hexa-2,4-dienoate, 674
Sodium erythorbate, 251
Sodium ethanoate, 620
Sodium ethyl hydroxybenzoate, 272
Sodium ethylmercurithiosalicylate, 736
Sodium formaldehyde sulfoxylate, **645**
Sodium formaldehyde sulfoxylate dihydrate, 645
Sodium L-glutamate, 452
Sodium glutamate monohydrate, 452
Sodium glycinate, 296
Sodium hexadecanoate, 473
Sodium hyaluronate, **646**
Sodium hydrate, 648
Sodium hydrogen L-(+)-2-aminoglutarate monohydrate, 452
Sodium Hydrogen Carbonate, 629
Sodium hydrogen sulfite, 655
Sodium hydroxide, 92, 577, 648
Sodium hydroxymethane sulfinate, 645
Sodium hydroxymethylsulfinate, 645
Sodium α-hydroxypropionate, 650
Sodium hyposulfite, 671
Sodium indigotin disulfonate, 193
Sodium iodide, 639
Sodium lactate, 93, 356, 650
Sodium Lactate Solution, 650
Sodium laurate, 384
Sodium Laurilsulfate, 651
Sodium lauryl sulfate, 151, 651, 771
and cationic surfactants, 652
Sodium Lauryl Sulphate, 651
Sodium metabisulfite, 578, 654, 670, 718
Sodium Metabisulphite, 654
Sodium methanalsulfoxylate, 645
Sodium methyl hydroxybenzoate, 444
Sodium monododecyl sulfate, 651
Sodium monolauryl sulfate, 651
Sodium monostearyl fumarate, 667
Sodium myristate, 455–457
Sodium nitrite, sodium ascorbate, 625
Sodium *o*-benzosulfimide, 608
Sodium orthophosphate, 656
Sodium palmitate, 473
Sodium phosphate
dibasic, 656, 660
monobasic, 658–659
secondary, 656
tribasic, 658
Sodium phosphate, dibasic, **656**
Sodium phosphate, monobasic, **659**
Sodium polymannuronate, 622
Sodium propanoate hydrate, 661
Sodium propionate, 587, 661
anhydrous, 662
Sodium propionate hydrate, 661
Sodium 4-propoxycarbonylphenolate, 599
Sodium Propyl Hydroxybenzoate, 599
Sodium Propyl Parahydroxybenzoate, 599
Sodium pyroborate, 634
Sodium pyroborate decahydrate, 633
Sodium Pyrosulfite, 654
Sodium salt, 599
Sodium sorbate, 674
Sodium starch glycolate, **663**, 690
Sodium stearyl fumarate, **667**
Sodium subsulfite, 671
Sodium sulfate, 654
Sodium sulfinomethanolate, 645
Sodium sulfite, 654–655, 669, 718
anhydrous, 669
dried, 669
exsiccated, 669
heptahydrate, 670
Sodium sulfite heptahydrate, **670**
Sodium sulphite, anhydrous, 669
Sodium tetraborate anhydrous, 634
Sodium tetraborate decahydrate, 633
Sodium thiosulfate, **671**
Sodium thiosulfate anhydrous, 671
Sodium Thiosulfate Hydrate, 671
Sodium thiosulfate pentahydrate, 671
Sodium Thiosulphate, 671
Sodium/calcium salt mix, of poly(methylvinyl ether/maleic anhydride), 534
Sodothiol, 671
Soft water, 769
Soft White, 481
Softisan 154, 762
Soiae oleum raffinatum, 682
Soja bean oil, 682
Solactol, 256
Solani amylum, 685
Solbrol A, 270
Solbrol M, 441
Solbrol P, 596
Solka-Floc, 136
Solkane 134a, 733
Solkane 142b, 171
Solkane 152a, 232
Solkane 227, 303
Solubility-enhancing agents *see* Dispersing agents
Solubilizing agent, macrogol 15 hydroxystearate, 391
Solubilizing agents
anionic emulsifying wax, 771
benzalkonium chloride, 56
benzethonium chloride, 59
benzyl alcohol, 64
benzyl benzoate, 67
cetylpyridinium chloride, 157
cyclodextrins, 211
glycerin monostearate, 290
hydroxpropyl betadex, 316
hypromellose, 326
inulin, 339
lecithin, 385
meglumine, 432
nonionic emulsifying wax, 777
phospholipids, 499
poloxamer, 507
polyoxyethylene alkyl ethers, 536
polyoxyethylene castor oil derivatives, 542
polyoxyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters, 550
polyoxyethylene stearates, 555
polyoxylglycerides, 558
povidone, 581
pyrrolidone, 600
sodium bicarbonate, 630
sorbitan esters, 675
starch, 690
stearic acid, 697
sulfobutylether β-cyclodextrin, 714
tricaprylin, 751, 753
triolein, 757
vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate, 764
see also Dissolution enhancers; Solvents; Surfactants; Wetting agents
Soluble gluside, 608
Soluble indigo blue, 193
Soluble methyl hydroxybenzoate, 444
Soluble propyl hydroxybenzoate, 599
Soluble saccharin, 608
Solugel, 278
Soluphor P, 600
Solutab, 206
Solutol HS 15, 391
Solvanom, 236
Solvarone, 236
Solvent, acetone, 7
Solvents
albumin, 15
alcohol, 17
almond oil, 30
benzyl alcohol, 64
benzyl benzoate, 67
butylene glycol, 77
carbon dioxide, 115
castor oil, 126

Solvents (*cont.*)
corn oil (maize), 199
cottonseed oil, 202
dibutyl phthalate, 225
diethyl phthalate, 230
dimethyl ether, 235
dimethyl phthalate, 236
dimethyl sulfoxide, 238
dimethylacetamide, 241
ethyl acetate, 253
ethyl lactate, 256
ethyl oleate, 259
glycerin, 283
glycofurol, 297
isopropyl alcohol, 346
isopropyl myristate, 348
isopropyl palmitate, 350
light mineral oil, 447
medium-chain triglycerides, 429
methyl lactate, 257
mineral oil, 445
monoethanolamine, 450
octyldodecanol, 465
olive oil, 470
peanut oil, 476
polyethylene glycol, 517
polyoxyl 35 castor oil, 542
propylene carbonate, 590–591
propylene glycol, 592
pyrrolidone, 600
safflower oil, 610
sesame oil, 614
soybean oil, 682
sunflower oil, 721
triacetin, 748
tricaprylin, 751
triethanolamine, 754
triethyl citrate, 756
triolein, 757
water, 766
water-miscible, 592
see also Solubilizing agents
Sorbic acid, 337, 580, 672
(*E*,*E*)-sorbic acid, 672
Sorbic acid potassium salt, 579
Sorbistat K, 672
Sorbitab, 679
Sorbitab SD 250, 680
Sorbitab SD 500, 680
Sorbitan, esters monodecanoate (sorbitan monolaurate), 675
Sorbitan diisostearate, 678
Sorbitan dioleate, 678
Sorbitan esters (sorbitan fatty acid esters), 553, 675
Sorbitan Laurate, 675, 678
Sorbitan monolaurate (sorbitan, esters monodecanoate), 675
Sorbitan Monooleate, 675
Sorbitan Monopalmitate, 675
Sorbitan Monostearate, 675
Sorbitan Oleate, 675, 678
Sorbitan Palmitate, 675, 678
Sorbitan sesquiolate, 678
Sorbitan Sesquioleate, 675, 733
Sorbitan sesquistearate, 678
Sorbitan Stearate, 675, 678
Sorbitan triisostearate, 678
Sorbitan Trioleate, 675, 678, 733
Sorbitan tristearate, 678
Sorbite, 679
Sorbitol, 253, 415–417, 427, 679
and polydextrose, 514
incompatibilities
methylparabens, 443
polyethylene glycols, 680
vs. mannitol, 427
Sorbitol Instant, 679
Sorbitol Special, 681
Sorbitolum, 679
Sorbo, 681
Sorbogem, 679
SorboLac, 364
Soya bean oil, 682
Soya lecithin, 733
Soya oil, refined, 682
Soyabean oil, 682
Soya-Bean Oil, Refined, 682
Soybean lecithin, 385
Soybean oil, 30, 109, 185, 200, 203, 477, 611, 615, 682, 722
hydrogenated, 762
Soybean phosphatides, mixed, 385
Soybean phospholipids, 385
Sparfloxacin, 399
Spectracel, 327
Spermaceti, synthetic, 774
Spermaceti wax, 775
Spermaceti wax replacement, 774
Speziol C16 Pharma, 155
Speziol C16-18 Pharma, 150
Speziol C18 Pharma, 700
Speziol TPGS Pharma, 764
SpheroLac, 364
Sphingomyelin, 499
Spirit of hartshorn, 39
Splenda, 701
Sporocides, chlorocresol, 169
Spress B820, 691
SSB 55 Pharma, 616
SSB 56 Pharma, 616
SSB 57 Pharma, 616
SSB Aquagold, 616
St. John's bread, 146
Stabilizers, glyceryl monooleate, 289
Stabilizing agent
ceresin, 148
macrogol 15 hydroxystearate, 391
Stabilizing agents
acacia, 1
agar, 13
albumin, 14
alginic acid, 20
aluminum stearate, 35
ammonium alginate, 41
ascorbic acid, 43
ascorbyl palmitate, 46
bentonite, 53
butylated hydroxytoluene, 75
calcium alginate, 83
calcium stearate, 103
carboxymethylcellulose calcium, 117
carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 119
carrageenan, 122
cellulose, microcrystalline and carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 134
ceratonia, 146
colloidal silicon dioxide, 185
cyclodextrins, 211
diethanolamine, 228
edetates, 247
ethylcellulose, 263
ethylene glycol palmitostearate, 267
glycerin monostearate, 290
guar gum, 298
hectorite, 301
hydroxpropyl betadex, 316
hydroxypropyl cellulose, 318
hypromellose, 326
inulin, 339
invert sugar, 706
lauric acid, 383
lecithin, 385
magnesium aluminum silicate, 393
mineral oil and lanolin alcohols, 449
monoethanolamine, 450
pectin, 478
pentetic acid, 480
phospholipids, 499
polacrilin potassium, 505
poloxamer, 507
polyvinyl alcohol, 564
potassium alginate, 566
potassium chloride, 572
povidone, 581
propyl gallate, 588
propylene glycol, 592
propylene glycol alginate, 594
raffinose, 603
sodium acetate, 620
sodium alginate, 622
sodium borate, 633
sodium stearyl fumarate, 668
sorbitol, 679
stearyl alcohol, 700
sulfobutylether β-cyclodextrin, 714
tagatose, 727
trehalose, 746
triethanolamine, 755
white wax, 779
xanthan gum, 782
xylitol, 786
yellow wax, 780
zinc acetate, 791
Stachyose, 604
Staflex DBP, 225
STA-Lite, 513
Standamul G, 465
StarCap 1500, 200, 694
Starch, 201, 370, 420, 427, 665, 685, 694, 696, 713
compressible, 691
corn, 685, 690
sterilizable, 694–695
maize, 685, 690
sterilizable, 690, 694–695
modified, dusting powder, 695
pea, 685
potato, 685
pregelatinized, 88, 201, 665, 690–691, 696
rice, 685
sterilizable maize, 690, 694–695
wheat, 685
Starch 1500 G, 691–692
Starch 1500 LM, 694
Starch carboxymethyl ether, sodium salt, 663
Starch gum, 220
Starch, pregelatinized, **691**
Starch, sterilizable maize, **695**
Starch sugar, 222
Starch syrup, 282
Starch-derivative dusting powder, 695
Star-Dri, 418, 420
Starfol Wax CG, 774
StarLac, 370
Stearalkonium hectorite, 302
Steareth-20, 536
Steareth-*N*, 536
Stearic acid, 105, 318, 384, 405, 455, 457, 473, 556, 562, 691, 697, 794
and corn oil, 199
and cottonseed oil, 202
castor oil, 126
peanut oil, 476
polyethoxylated, 554
purified, 699
sunflower oil, 721
Stearic acid aluminum dihydroxide salt, 35

Stearic acid aluminum salt, 35
Stearic acid, calcium salt, 103
Stearic acid, magnesium salt, 404
Stearic acid, monoester with glycerol, 290
Stearic acid zinc salt, 793
Stearic monoglyceride, 290
Stearol, 700
Stearoyl Macrogolglycerides, 557
Stearoyl Polyoxylglycerides, 557
Stearyl alcohol, 151, 156, 700
Steatite, 728
Stenol, 700
Stepan GMO, 288
Stepan GMS, 290
Stepan IPM, 348
Stepan IPP, 350
Stereophanic acid, 697
Sterile water
  for inhalation, 769
  for injection, 769
  for irrigation, 769
Sterile water for inhalation, 769
Sterile water for injection, 769
Sterile water for irrigation, 769
Sterilizable corn starch, 695
Sterilizable maize starch, 690, 695
Sterilizing agents
  potassium metabisulfite, 577
  see also Disinfectants
Sterisil, 304
Steri/Sol, 304
Sternpur, 385
Sterogenol, 158
Sterotex, 762
Sterotex HM, 762
Sterotex K, 129, 763
Stiffening agent, ceresin, 148
Stiffening agents
  anionic emulsifying wax, 771
  carnauba wax, 773
  cetyl alcohol, 155
  cetyl esters wax, 774
  dextrin, 220
  hydrogenated castor oil, 128
  microcrystalline wax, 775
  nonionic emulsifying wax, 777
  paraffin, 474
  stearyl alcohol, 700
  white wax, 779
  yellow wax, 780
  see also Gelling agents; Thickening agents; Viscosity-increasing agents
Strese & Hofmann's Hectorite, 301
Stronger ammonia water, 39
Substituted glucens, 160
Sucaryl, 644
Sucaryl calcium, 644
Sucaryl sodium, 608
Succinylsulfathiazole, 261
Sucralfate, 403, 408
Sucralosa, 701
Sucralose, 606, 609, 701
Sucralosum, 701
SucraPlus, 701
Sucre de gélatine, 295
Sucrose, 224, 275, 282, 604, 702–703, 708, 710, 712–713
  alternatives to *see* Sweetening agents
  direct compacting, 709
  directly compressible, 709
  sweetness
    vs. acesulfame potassium, 3
    vs. aspartame, 48
    vs. fructose, 273, 275
    vs. lactitol, 358
    vs. maltitol, 414
    vs neohesperidin dihydrochalcone, 458
    vs. neotame, 460
    vs. saccharin, 605
    vs. saccharin sodium, 608
    vs. xylitol, 789
  vs. artificial sweetening agents, 607, 609
  see also Sugar
Sucrose octaacetate, **707**
Sucrose *see* Sucrose
Sucrose syrup, 416
Sucticide, 152
Sugar, 703
  alternatives to *see* Sweetening agents
  compressible, 706, 709, 712–713
  confectioner's, 706, 710, 713
  icing, 710
  powdered, 710
  refined, 703
  see also Sucrose
Sugar coating adjuncts, 710
  sucrose, 703–704
Sugar, compressible, **709**
Sugar, confectioner's, **710**
Sugar seeds, 712
Sugar spheres, 706, 710, 712
Sugar-free lozenges, 513
Sugartab, 710
Suglets, 712
Sukor, 458
Sulfate of lime, 107
  anhydrous, 105
Sulfinylbismethane, 238
o-sulfobenzimide, 605
o-sulfobenzoic acid imide, 605
Sulfo-butanedioic acid 1,4-bis(2-ethylhexyl) ester, sodium salt, 244
Sulfobutylether β-cyclodextrin, 213, 316, 714
Sulfobutylether-β-cyclodextrin, sodium salt, 714
1-*p*-sulfophenylazo-2-naphthol-6-sulfonic acid disodium salt, 194
Sulfosuccinic acid 1,4-bis(2-ethylhexyl) ester *S*-sodium salt, 244
Sulfothiorine, 671
Sulfur dioxide, **718**
Sulfuric acid, **719**
  dilute, 720
  fuming, 720
Sulfuric acid aluminum potassium salt (2 : 1 : 1) dodecahydrate, 567
Sulfuric acid monododecyl ester, sodium salt, 651
Sulfuric acid monododecyl ester sodium salt (1 : 1), 651
Sulfur(IV) oxide, 718
Sulfurous acid disodium salt, 669
Sulfurous anhydride, 718
Sulfurous oxide, 718
Sulphinylbismethane, 238
Sulphuric Acid, 719
Sunett, 3
Sunflower oil, 185, 200, 203, 477, 611, 615, 684, 721
  refined, 721
Sunflowerseed oil, 721
Sunmalt, 422
Sunmalt S, 422
Sunrose, 118
Sunscreens, 722
Sunset yellow FCF, 193–194
Super Hartolan, 382
Super Refined Crodamol IPM, 348
Super Refined Crodamol IPP, 350
Superiore, 728
SuperTab 11SD, 376
SuperTab 14SD, 376
SuperTab 21AN, 359
SuperTab 22AN, 359
SuperTab 30GR, 364
Suppocire, 722
Suppository bases, 521, 763
  agar, 13
  factors affecting drug release, 722
  hard fat, 431, 722
    additives, 722–723
    chemical reactivity, 723
    melting characteristics, 723
    rheology, 723
  poloxamer, 507
  polyethylene glycol, 517
Suppository bases, hard fat, **722**
Supronic, 506
Surelease, 262–263
Sureteric, 562
Surfactant, nonionic, macrogol 15 hydroxystearate, 391
Surfactants
  alcohol, 17
  and emulsifying waxes, 772, 778
  anionic
    and self-emulsifying glyceryl monooleate, 289
    docusate sodium, 244
    emulsifying wax BP, 772, 778
    phospholipids, 499
    sodium lauryl sulfate, 651
  cationic
    benzethonium chloride, 59
    cetrimide, 152
    cetylpyridinium chloride, 157
    phospholipids, 499
    sodium lauryl sulfate incompatibility, 652
    xanthan gum incompatibility, 783
  chlorhexidine activity, 164
  lauric acid, 383
  myristyl alcohol, 456
  nonionic
    and butylparaben, 80
    and ethylparaben, 271
    and methylparaben, 443
    and propylparaben, 597
    and sorbic acid, 672–673
    emulsifying wax USP, 772, 778
    glyceryl monooleate, 289
    phospholipids, 499
    polyoxyethylene alkyl ethers, 536
    polyoxyethylene castor oil derivatives, 542
    polyoxyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters, 550
    polyoxyethylene stearates, 554
    polyoxylglycerides, 558
    polysorbate 80, 443
    sorbitan esters, 675
  triethyl citrate, 756
  vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate, 764
  see also Solubilizing agents; Wetting agents
Surgical spirit, 19
Suspending agents
  acacia, 1
  agar, 13
  alginic acid, 20
  bentonite, 53
  calcium stearate, 103
  carbomers, 110
  carboxymethylcellulose calcium, 117
  carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 119
  carrageenan, 122
  cellulose, powdered, 136
  cellulose, microcrystalline and carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 134
  ceratonia, 146
  colloidal silicon dioxide, 185

Suspending agents (*cont.*)
dextrin, 220
gelatin, 278
guar gum, 298
hectorite, 301
hydrophobic colloidal silica, 309
hydroxyethyl cellulose, 311
hydroxyethylmethyl cellulose, 314
hydroxypropyl cellulose, 318
hypromellose, 326
kaolin, 352
magnesium aluminum silicate, 393
maltitol solution, 416
medium-chain triglycerides, 429
methylcellulose, 438
microcrystalline cellulose, 129
phospholipids, 499
polycarbophil, 509
polyethylene glycol, 518
polyoxyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters, 550
potassium alginate, 566
povidone, 581
propylene glycol alginate, 594
saponite, 612
sesame oil, 614
sodium alginate, 622
sodium starch glycolate, 663
sorbitan esters, 675
sucrose, 703
tragacanth, 744
vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate, 764
xanthan gum, 782
Sustained-release agents
acetyltributyl citrate, 8
agar, 13
alginic acid, 20
carbomers, 110
carnauba wax, 772
carrageenan, 122
cellulose acetate, 141
glycerin monostearate, 290
glyceryl monooleate, 289
glyceryl palmitostearate, 293
guar gum, 298
hydrogenated castor oil, 128
hydroxypropyl cellulose, 318
hypromellose, 326
hypromellose acetate succinate, 330
hypromellose phthalate, 333
mannitol, 424
methylcellulose, 438
oleyl alcohol, 468
peanut oil, 476
polacrilin potassium, 505
polyethylene oxide, 522
polyoxylglycerides, 558
polyvinyl alcohol, 564
sesame oil, 614
sodium acetate, 621
sodium alginate, 622
sodium hyaluronate, 646
stearic acid, 697
sugar spheres, 712
tributyl citrate, 749
triethyl citrate, 756
white wax, 779
xanthan gum, 782
yellow wax, 780
zein, 790
see also Controlled-release agents
Sustane, 75
Suva 134a, 733
Swanlac, 616
Sweet almond oil, 29
Sweet One, 3
Sweetening agents
acesulfame potassium, 3–4
alitame, 28
artificial *vs.* sucrose, 607, 644
aspartame, 48, 50
compressible sugar, 709
confectioner's sugar, 710
dextrose, 222
erythritol, 251
fructose, 273
glycerin, 283
glycine, 295
inulin, 339
isomalt, 343
lactitol, 357
liquid glucose, 282
maltitol, 414
maltitol solution, 416
maltose, 422
mannitol, 424
neohesperidin dihydrochalcone, 458
neotame, 460
relative sweetness, 275
saccharin, 605
saccharin sodium, 608–609
sodium cyclamate, 643
sorbitol, 679, 681
sucralose, 701
sucrose, 703
synergistic effects, 607, 609, 644
tagatose, 727
thaumatin, 735
trehalose, 746
xylitol, 786
Syloid 244 FP-BU, 188
Syloid 244FP, 188
Sylvine, 573
Sylvinite, 573
Sylvite, 573
Synaceti 116, 774
Syncal CAS, 607
Synperonic, 506
Synpro, 35, 103, 793
Synpro 90, 404
Synpro Aluminum Monostearate NF, 36
Synpro Aluminum Monostearate NF Gellant, 36
Synthetic alpha tocopherol, 31
Synthetic amorphous silica, 185
Synthetic magnesium silicate, 402
Synthetic paraffin, 475
Synthetic spermaceti, 774
Syrupy phosphoric acid, 503

Tabfine D-100, 222
Table salt, 637
Tablet binders/binding agents *see* Binding agents
Tablet coating agents *see* Coating agents
Tablet film former *see* Film-forming agents
Tablet/capsule diluents *see* Diluents (tablet/capsule)
Tablet/capsule disintegrants *see* Disintegrants (tablet/capsule)
Tablet/capsule lubricants *see* Lubricants (tablet/capsule)
Tablets, chewable *see* Chewable tablet formulations; Medicated confectionery bases
Tablettose, 364
Tablitz, 691
Tablo, 663
Tabulose, 129
Tagatose, 606, 609, 727
Tagatosum, 727
Tagatoza, 727
Talc, 55, 175, 302, 396, 403, 409, 613, 728, 762
methylparabens incompatibility, 443
powdered, 728
purified, 728
Talcum, 728
Talha gum, 1
Talin, 735
Tangantangan, 126
Tannic acid, 13
Tapi, 418
Tapioca (cassava) starch, 690
Tartaric acid, 183, 277, 413, 570, 731
effervescent tablet formulations, 629
sodium bicarbonate neutralization, 632
Tartrazine, 193, 195
Taste-masking agents
alginic acid, 20
erythritol, 251
glyceryl palmitostearate, 293
Taumatin, 735
Taumatina, 735
Taxol, 542
Taylorite, 53
TBC, 749
TEA, 754
Tealan, 754
TEC, 756
Teel oil, 614
Tegin, 288, 290
Tegin 503, 290
Tegin 515, 290
Tegin 4100, 290
Tegin M, 290
Tego Alkanol 16, 155
Tego Alkanol 18, 700
Tego Alkanol 1618, 150
Tego Alkanol 6855, 150
Tego Carbomer, 110
Tegosept B, 78
Tegosept E, 270
Tegosept M, 441
Tegosept P, 596
Tegosoft M, 348
Tegosoft P, 350
Tegostearic, 697
Telfairic acid, 389
Tenox BHA, 73–74
Tenox BHT, 75
Tenox PG, 587
Terra alba, 105
tert-butyl-4-methoxyphenol, 73
2-*tert*-Butyl-4-methoxyphenol, 73
Tertiary calcium phosphate, 99
Tetracemate dipotassium, 248
Tetracemate tetrasodium, 249
Tetracemic acid, 247
Tetracemin, 249
Tetracycline, 353, 403, 408
n-tetradecanoic acid, 455
Tetradecanoic acid, 1-methylethyl ester, 348
n-tetradecanol-1, 456
1-tetradecanol, 456
n-tetradecyl alcohol, 456
Tetradecyltrimethylammonium bromide, 154
Tetrafluoroethane, 233, 303
1,1,1,2-Tetrafluoroethane, 733
Tetrafluoroethane (HFC), **733**
Tetraglycol, 297
α-(tetrahydrofuranyl)-ω-hydroxy-poly(oxyethylene), 297
α-[(Tetrahydro-2-furanyl)methyl]-ω-hydroxy-poly(oxy-1,2-ethanediyl), 297
Tetrahydrofurfuryl alcohol, 297
Tetrahydrofurfuryl alcohol polyethylene glycol ether, 297

Tetrahydroxybutane, 251
(+)-(2*R*,4′*R*,8′*R*)-2,5,7,8-Tetramethyl-2-(4′,8′,12′- trimethyltridecyl)-6-chromanyl acetate, 32
(±)-(2*RS*,4′*RS*,8′*RS*)-2,5,7,8-Tetramethyl-2-(4′,8′,12′-trimethyltridecyl)-6-chromanol, 31
(+)-(2*R*,4′*R*,8′*R*)-2,5,7,8-tetramethyl-2-(4′,8′,12′-trimethyltridecyl)-6-chromanol, 32
(±)-(2*RS*,4′*RS*,8′*RS*)-2,5,7,8-tetramethyl-2-(4′,8′,12′-trimethyltridecyl)-6-chromanyl acetate, 32
Tetrasodium edetate, 249
Tetrasodium ethylenebis(iminodiacetate), 249
Tetrasodium ethylenediaminetetraacetate, 249
Texapon K12P, 651
Texofor A, 536
TGS, 701
Thalin, 735
Thaumatin, 606, 609, 735
Thaumatine, 735
Thaumatins, 735
Thaumatins protein, 735
Theobroma oil, 725, 771
Therapeutic agents
albumin, 14
alginic acid, 20, 22
almond oil, 30
alpha tocopherol, 31
aluminum hydroxide, 400
aluminum hydroxide adjuvant, 35
ammonia solution, 40
ammonium chloride, 42
anionic emulsifying wax, 771
ascorbic acid, 43
attapulgite, 51
bentonite, 53
benzethonium chloride, 60
benzoic acid, 61
benzyl alcohol, 64
benzyl benzoate, 67
butylated hydroxytoluene, 75
calcium acetate, 82
calcium alginate, 84
calcium carbonate, 86
calcium chloride, 89
calcium hydroxide, 91
calcium lactate, 92
calcium sulfate, 105
castor oil, 127
cellulose acetate, 141
cellulose acetate phthalate (CAP), 144
cetrimide, 153
chlorbutanol, 166
chloroxylenol, 177
citric acid monohydrate, 181
coconut oil, 184
cottonseed oil, 202
dextrin, 220
dextrose, 222
dibasic sodium phosphate, 656
diluted hydrochloric acid, 309
dimethicone, 233
dimethyl sulfoxide, 238–239
docusate sodium, 244, 246
edetic acid, 247
fumaric acid, 276
gelatin, 278
glycerin, 283
guar gum, 298
hexetidine, 304
hydrochloric acid, 308
isopropyl alcohol, 346
isopropyl myristate, 348
kaolin, 352
lactic acid, 355
lactitol, 357
lecithin, 386
light mineral oil, 447
macrogol 15 hydroxystearate, 392
magnesium carbonate, 397
magnesium oxide, 400
magnesium silicate, 403
magnesium trisilicate, 408
malic acid, 411
maltodextrin, 418
maltol, 422
mannitol, 424
medium-chain triglycerides, 429
menthol, 433
methionine, 436
methylcellulose, 438
mineral oil, 446
monobasic sodium phosphate, 659
monoethanolamine, 450
monothioglycerol, 454
nitrous oxide, 463
oleyl alcohol, 469
olive oil, 470
peanut oil, 476
petrolatum, 482
phenol, 485
phosphoric acid, 503
poloxamers, 507
potassium benzoate, 569
potassium bicarbonate, 570
potassium chloride, 572
potassium citrate, 574–575
potassium hydroxide, 576
propylene glycol, 593
simethicone, 619–620
sodium acetate, 621
sodium alginate, 622
sodium ascorbate, 625
sodium bicarbonate, 629
sodium carbonate, 635
sodium citrate dihydrate, 641
sodium hyaluronate, 647
sodium lactate, 650
sodium propionate, 661, 663
sorbitol, 679
soybean oil, 682–683
sucrose, 704
sulfuric acid, 719
sunflower oil, 721
thymol, 739
titanium oxide, 741
triethanolamine, 754
trisodium edetate, 249
vanillin, 760
xylitol, 786
zinc acetate, 791
Thermal stabilizers
colloidal silicon dioxide, 185
hydrophobic colloidal silica, 309
THFP, 297
Thiamin (vitamin B1), 578
Thickening agent, ceresin, 148
Thickening agents
agar, 13
ammonium alginate, 41
calcium alginate, 83
calcium lactate, 92
cellulose, powdered, 136
cellulose, microcrystalline and carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 134
colloidal silicon dioxide, 186
dextrin, 220
ethylcellulose, 263
ethylene glycol palmitostearate, 267
glyceryl behenate, 286
hectorite, 301
hydroxyethyl cellulose, 311
hydroxyethylmethyl cellulose, 314
hydroxypropyl cellulose, 318
hydroxypropyl starch, 325
hypromellose, 326
methylcellulose, 438
myristyl alcohol, 456
octyldodecanol, 465
pectin, 478
polycarbophil, 509
polyethylene glycol, 518
polyethylene oxide, 522
potassium alginate, 566
starch, 685
trehalose, 746
xanthan gum, 782–783
zinc stearate, 793
see also Gelling agents; Stiffening agents; Viscosity-increasing agents
Thimerosal, 247, 493, 495, 498, 736
Thimerosal Sigmaultra, 736
Thin vegetable oil, 429
Thioglycerin, 454
1-thioglycerol, 454
Thiomersal, 736
Thiomersalate, 736
Thiomersalum, 736
Thiosulfuric acid disodium salt, 671
Thiothixene, 760
Thyme camphor, 739
Thymic acid, 739
Thymol, 435, 739
Thymolum, 739
TIC Pretested, 594
Timol, 739
Timolol, 238, 579
Tioxide, 741
TiPure, 741
Titanic anhydride, 741
Titanii dioxidum, 741
Titanium dioxide, 189, 193, 196, 335, 741
anatase, 741
Titanium Oxide, 741
TM-β-CD, 213
Tobermorite, 101
Tocofersolan, 764
Tocopherol, 31–33
(2*R*,4′*R*,8′*R*)-alpha-Tocopherol, 31
alpha Tocopherol, 31–32, 46
and ascorbyl palmitate, 31
and lecithin, 31
and linoleic acid, 31
and methyl linolenate, 31
natural, 32
synthetic, 31
d-alpha Tocopheryl acetate, 32
d-alpha Tocopheryl acid succinate, 32–33
and canola oil, 109
beta Tocopherol, 32–33
delta Tocopherol, 32–33
(±)-α-tocopherol acetate, 32
(+)-α-Tocopherol hydrogen succinate, 33
Tocopherol polyethylene glycol succinate, 764
dl-α-tocopherol succinate, 33
α-tocopheroli acetas, 32
Tocopherols excipient, 32–33
RRR-α-tocopherolum, 31
Tocophersolan, 764
d-α-tocopheryl acetate, 32
d-α-tocopheryl acid succinate, 33
D-α-tocopheryl polyethylene glycol 1000 succinate, 764
Tolbutamide, 396
α-toluenol, 64

Tonicity agents
dextrose, 222
glycerin, 283
hydroxpropyl betadex, 316
mannitol, 424
potassium chloride, 572
sodium chloride, 637
Topanol, 75
Tower rapeseed oil, 108
Toxilic acid, 410
TPGS, 764
Trag, 744
Tragacanth, 2, 146–147, 300, 744
and acacia, 1
and guar gum, 299
methylparabens incompatibility, 443
powdered, 745
Tragacanth gum, 744
Tragacantha, 744
Tragant, 744
trans-butenedioic acid, 276
Transdermal delivery agents
acetyltributyl citrate, 9
dimethyl sulfoxide, 238
ethylene vinyl acetate, 268
glyceryl monooleate, 289
isopropyl myristate, 348
isopropyl palmitate, 350
light mineral oil, 448
polymethacrylates, 526
polyvinyl alcohol, 564
sesame oil, 614
sodium carboxymethyl guar, 300
stearyl alcohol, 700
see also Penetration enhancers
trans-1,2-ethylenedicarboxylic acid, 276
Transmissible Spongiform Encephalopathy (TSE), 280
Treha, 746
Trehalose, **746–747**
Trehalose dihydrate, 746
Triacetin, **748**
Triacetinum, 748
Triacetyl glycerine, 748
Tribasic calcium phosphate, 99
Tribasic sodium phosphate, 658
Tribehenin, 286
Tributyl Acetylcitrate, 8
Tributyl citrate, 9–10, 749, 756–757
Tributyl citrate acetate, 8
Tributyl ester, citric acid, 749
Tributyl 2-hydroxy-1,2,3-propanetricarboxylate, 749
Tributylis acetylcitras, 8
Tri-Cafos, 99
TRI-CAL WG, 99
Tricalcii phosphas, 99
Tricalcium diorthophosphate, 99
Tricalcium orthophosphate, 99
Tricalcium phosphate, 99
Tricalcium silicon pentaoxide, 102
Tricaprilin, 751
Tricaprylin, **751**
Tricapryloglycerol, 751
Tricaprylylglycerin, 751
Trichloro-*tert*-butanol, 166
β,β,β-trichloro-*tert*-butyl alcohol, 166
Trichlorofluoromethane, 173
1′,4′,6′-trichlorogalactosucrose, 701
1,1,1-Trichloro-2-methyl-2-propanol, 166
1,1,1-Trichloro-2-methyl-2-propanol hemihydrate, 166
Trichloromonofluoromethane, 173–174
Montreal Protocol, 175
Trichloro-*t*-butyl alcohol, 166
4,1′,6′-trichloro-4,1′,6′-trideoxy-*galacto*-sucrose, 701
1,2,3-tri(*cis*-9-octadecenoyl)glycerol, 757
Tricresol, 203
1-tridecanecarboxylic acid, 455
Trielaidin, 757
Trielaidoylglycerol, 757
Triethanolamine, 229, 451, 754
Triethyl acetylcitrate, 10
Triethyl citrate, 9–10, 750, 756
Triethyl citrate acetate, 10
Triethylis citras, 756
Triethylolamine, 754
Triglycerida saturata media, 429
Triglyceride, caprylic/capric, 429
Triglycerides, medium-chain, 429, 725, 752, 763
Triglycerides, Medium-Chain, 429
3,4,5-Trihydroxybenzoic acid propyl ester, 587
Trihydroxyborene, 68
9,10,16-trihydroxypalmitic acid, 618
8,9,15-trihydroxypentadecane-1-carboxylic acid, 618
Trihydroxypropane glycerol, 283
Trihydroxytriethylamine, 754
Triiron tetraoxide, 340
Trimethyl-β-cyclodextrin, 213, 716
N,*N*,*N*-trimethyldodecylammonium bromide, 153
N,*N*,*N*-trimethylhexadecylammonium bromide, 153
α-(Trimethylsilyl)-ω-methylpoly[oxy(dimethylsilylene)], 233
N,*N*,*N*-trimethyl-1-tetradecanaminium bromide, 154
Trimethyltetradecylammonium bromide, 152–153
5,7,8-trimethyltocol, 31
α-(Trimethysilyl-ω-methylpoly[oxy(dimethylsilylene)], mixture with silicon dioxide, 619
Trioctanoin, 751
Trioctonolglycerol, 751
Triolein, **757**
Tripotassium citrate, 574
Trisept B, 78
Tris(hydroxyethyl)amine, 754
Trisodium calcium diethylenetriaminepentaacetate, 481
Trisodium citrate, 640
anhydrous, 642
Trisodium edetate, 248–249
Trisodium ethylenediaminetetraacetate, 249
Trisodium 2-hydroxypropane-1,2,3-tricarboxylate dihydrate, 640
Trisodium 2-hydroxy-1,2,3-propanetricarboxylic acid, 642
Trisodium orthophosphate, 658
Trisodium phosphate, 658
Trisodium zinc diethylenetriaminepentaacetate, 481
Tri-Stat IU, 337
Tri-Sweet, 48
TRI-TAB, 99
Tritici amylum, 685
Trolamine, 754
Trolaminum, 754
Tronox, 741
TSE *see* Transmissable Spongiform Encephalopathy
TSP, 658
T-Wax, 777
Tylopur, 326
Tylopur MH, 314
Tylopur MHB, 314
Tylose, 438
Tylose CB, 118
Tylose H, 311
Tylose MB, 314
Tylose MGA, 118
Tylose MH, 314
Tylose MHB, 314
Tylose MO, 326
Tylose PHA, 311

U-1149, 276
Ultramarine blue
and butylparaben, 80
and ethylparaben, 271
and propylparaben, 597
Ultrez, 112
1-undecanecarboxylic acid, 383
Unihydag WAX-14, 456
Unimate GMS, 290
Unimate IPP, 350
Unimoll DB, 225
Unimoll DM, 236
Uniphen P-23, 78, 270, 441, 596
Uni-Pure, 685
Unipure LD, 691
Unipure WG220, 691
Unisept, 165
Unisept B, 78
Urethane hydrogels, 518
USAF EK-P-583, 276
USG Terra Alba, 105

Vaccine adjuvants
aluminum hydroxide adjuvant, 34
aluminum phosphate adjuvant, 38
mineral oil, 445
VA/ethylene copolymer, 268
Vanillal, 261
Vanillic aldehyde, 760
Vanillin, 261–262, 760
Vanillinum, 760
Vanzan NF, 782
Vaselinum album, 483
Vaselinum flavum, 481
Veegum, 393
Veegum HS, 53
Vegarol 1695, 155
Vegarol 1898, 700
Vegetable glycerides, hydrogenated, 722
Vegetable lecithin, 385
Vegetable oil
hydrogenated, 431, 762
type I, 129, 203, 762
type II, 763
thin, 429
Vegetable oil, hydrogenated, **762**
VEGS, 764
Veltol, 421
Veltol Plus, 257
Versene, 249
Versene Acid, 247
Versene CA, 248
Versene-9, 249
Versenex, 480
Vestimol C, 225
Vianol, 75
Vilvanolin CAB, 484
Vinegar, artificial, 6
Vinegar acid, 5
Vinegar naphtha, 253
Vinegar salts, 82
Vinyl acetate, copolymer with 1-vinyl-2-pyrrolidinone, 196
Vinyl acetate/ethylene copolymer, 268
Vinyl alcohol polymer, 564
1-Vinyl-2-pyrrolidinone, copolymer with vinyl acetate, 196

1-vinyl-2-pyrrolidinone homopolymer, 208
1-vinyl-2-pyrrolidinone polymer, 581
Virgin Almond Oil, 29
Virgin Castor Oil, 126
Virgin olive oil, 471–472
Viricides *see* Antiviral agents
Viscarin, 122
Viscol, 438
Viscosity-increasing agents
  acacia, 1
  agar, 13
  alginic acid, 20
  bentonite, 53
  carboxymethylcellulose calcium, 117
  carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 119
  carrageenan, 122
  ceratonia, 146
  cetostearyl alcohol, 150
  chitosan, 159
  colloidal silicon dioxide, 185
  cyclomethicone, 215
  ethylcellulose, 262
  gelatin, 278
  glycerin, 283
  guar gum, 298
  hectorite, 301
  hydrogenated vegetable oil type I, 762
  hydrophobic colloidal silica, 309
  hydroxyethyl cellulose, 311
  hydroxyethylmethyl cellulose, 314
  hydroxypropyl cellulose, 318
  hydroxypropyl starch, 325
  hypromellose, 326
  magnesium aluminum silicate, 393
  maltodextrin, 418
  methylcellulose, 438
  myristyl alcohol, 456
  polydextrose, 513
  polyethylene glycol, 518
  poly(methylvinyl ether/maleic anhydride), 534
  polyvinyl acetate phthalate, 562
  polyvinyl alcohol, 564
  potassium chloride, 572
  povidone, 581
  propylene glycol alginate, 594
  saponite, 612
  sodium alginate, 622, 624
  sodium chloride, 637
  starch, 690
  stearyl alcohol, 700
  sucrose, 703
  sulfobutylether β-cyclodextrin, 714
  tragacanth, 744
  xanthan gum, 147, 782–784
  see also Gelling agents; Stiffening agents; Thickening agents
Vitagel, 278
Vitagran, 86
Vitamin C, 43
Vitamin C palmitate, 46
Vitamin C sodium, 625
Vitamin E, 32–33
Vitamin E polyethylene glycol 1000 succinate, 764
Vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate, **764**
Vitamin E TPGS, 764
Vitamin F, 389
Vitamins
  solubilizing agents
    polyoxyethylene castor oil derivatives, 542–543
    polyoxyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters, 550
  vitamin A palmitate, 542–543
  vitamin A propionate, 543
  vitamin B1 (thiamin), 578
  vitamin C, 43, 450
  vitamin C palmitate, 46
  vitamin C sodium, 625
  vitamin D, 542
  vitamin E, 31–33
  vitamin E acetate, 542
  vitamin E polyethylene glycol 1000 succinate, 764
  vitamin E polyethylene glycol succinate, 764
  vitamin E TPGS, 764
  vitamin F, 389
  vitamin K1, 542
Vivapress Ca, 86
Vivapress Ca 740, 88
Vivapress Ca 800, 88
Vivapur, 129
Vivapur MCG 591 PCG, 134
Vivapur MCG 611 PCG., 134
Vivasol, 206
Vivastar P, 663
Vivastar PSF, 665
Voelicherite, 100
Volpo, 536
Volpo N, 537
Volpo N10, 536
Vulvic acid, 383

Wacker HDK, 185
Waglinol 3/9280, 429
Waglinol 6014, 348
Waglinol 6016, 350
Walocel C, 118
Warfarin, 353
Warfarin sodium, 396
Water, **766**
  distilled, 769
  for injection, 769
  potable, 766
  purified, 766, 769
Water for injection, 769
Water for injection (WFI), **769**
Water softeners, edetic acid, 247
Water-absorbing agents
  calcium chloride, 89
  carboxymethylcellulose calcium, 117
  carboxymethylcellulose sodium, 119
Water-repelling agents
  dimethicone, 233
  simethicone, 619
Water-soluble lanolin, 380
Wax
  anionic emulsifying, 151, 653, 770, 778
  anionic emulsifying (*see* Emulsifying wax *anionic*)
  bleached, 779
  carnauba, 772
  ceresin, 148
  ceresine, 148
  cetyl esters, 774
  earth, 148
  hard, 474
    alternatives to, 762
  microcrystalline, 149, 475, 775, 780–781
  mineral, 148
  nonionic emulsifying, 541, 777
  refined, 780
  spermaceti, 775
  white, 149, 776, 779, 781
  white ceresin, 148
  white ozokerite, 148
  yellow, 149, 776, 779–780
Wax, anionic emulsifying, **770**
Wax, carnauba, **772**
Wax, cetyl esters, **774**
Wax, microcrystalline, **775**
Wax, nonionic emulsifying, **777**
Wax, white, **779**
Wax, yellow, **780**
Wecobee, 722
Wecoline 1295, 383
Weisserton, 352
Wetting agents
  benzalkonium chloride, 56
  benzethonium chloride, 59
  cetylpyridinium chloride, 157
  docusate sodium, 244
  glycine, 295
  hypromellose, 327
  phospholipids, 499
  poloxamer, 507
  polyoxyethylene alkyl ethers, 536
  polyoxyethylene castor oil derivatives, 542
  polyoxyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters, 550
  polyoxyethylene stearates, 555
  sodium lauryl sulfate, 651
  sorbitan esters, 675
  tricaprylin, 751
  see also Solubilizing agents; Surfactants
White Beeswax, 779
White bole, 352
White ceresin wax, 148
White dextrin, 220
White mineral oil, 445
White ozokerite wax, 148
White petrolatum, 483, 485
White petroleum jelly, 483
White soft paraffin, 483
  and anionic emulsifying wax, 771
  and lanolin alcohols, 484
White soft paraffin and lanolin alcohols, 484
White wax, 149, 776, 779, 781
Whitfield's ointment, 61
Whitlockite, 100
Wickenol 111, 350
Wilkinite, 53
Wilzin, 792
Witcarb, 86
Witcizer 300, 225
Witepsol, 722
Wood ether, 235
Wool Alcohols, 382
  and petrolatum, 484
Wool alcohols ointment, 485
Wool Fat, 378
  hydrogenated, 379
  hydrous, 380
  refined, 378
Wool Fat, Hydrous, 380
Wool wax alcohols, 382

Xanthan gum, 147, 300, 393, 782
Xanthani gummi, 782
Xantural, 782
Xilitol, 786
Xylifin, 786
Xylisorb, 786
Xylit, 786
Xylitab, 786
Xylitab 100, 789
Xylitab 200, 789
Xylitab 300, 789
Xylite, 786
Xylitol, 253, 426, 681, 786
  cooling effect, 789
  sweetness *vs.* mannitol, 789
  sweetness *vs.* sucrose, 789
Xylitolo, 786
Xylitolum, 786
Xylo-Mucine, 118
xylo-Pentane-1,2,3,4,5-pentol, 786

p-xylotocopherol, 33

Yellow Beeswax, 780
Yellow dextrin, 220
Yellow ferric oxide, 340
Yellow iron oxide, 340
  and butylparaben, 80
  and ethylparaben, 271
  and propylparaben, 597
Yellow ochre, 340
Yellow orange S, 194
Yellow Petrolatum, 481, 485
Yellow petroleum jelly, 481
Yellow soft paraffin, and lanolin alcohols, 484
Yellow soft paraffin and lanolin alcohols, 484
Yellow wax, 149, 776, 779–780
Yeso blanco, 107

Zebedassite, 612
Zein, **790**
Zenalb, 14
Zephex 134a, 733
Zephex 227 ea, 303
Zephiran, 56
Zerose, 251
Zinc acetas dihydricus, 791
Zinc acetate, **791**
Zinc acetate anhydrous, 791
Zinc Acetate Dihydrate, 791
Zinc diacetate, 791
Zinc distearate, 793
Zinc DTPA, 481
Zinc ethanoate, 791
Zinc formaldehyde sulfoxylate, 646
Zinc (II) acetate, 791
Zinc octadecanoate, 793
Zinc oxide, 285, 721
Zinc pentetate, 481
Zinc propionate, 662
Zinc soap, 793
Zinc stearate, 105, 405, 699, 793
  dibasic, 793
Zinc trisodium pentetate, 481
Zinci stearas, 793
ZK-43649, 480